

---

# The Coupling Time for the Ising Heat-Bath Dynamics & Efficient Optimization for Statistical Inference

---

**Timothy Luke Hyndman**

ORCID Identifier: 0000-0002-7047-5023

Submitted in total fulfilment of the requirements of the  
degree of Doctor of Philosophy

March 2019

SCHOOL OF MATHEMATICS AND STATISTICS  
THE UNIVERSITY OF MELBOURNE

# Abstract

In this thesis we consider two separate topics of study. The first topic concerns the Ising heat-bath Glaubers dynamics. These dynamics describe a continuous time Markov chain, whose states are assignments of spins to each vertex in a given graph. We define a coupling of two such Markov chains, as well as the coupling time which is the time it takes for these chains to have the same spin configuration. We prove that on certain graphs, at certain temperatures, the distribution of the coupling time converges to a Gumbel distribution. We begin by proving this for the 1 dimensional cycle at all temperatures. We then extend our proof to apply to a certain class of transitive graphs at sufficiently high temperatures. Fundamental to our proofs are the promising new framework of information percolation, used by [Lubetzky and Sly](#) to prove the existence of cutoff for the Ising model, and compound Poisson approximation. We also prove a general result which relates the coupling times of the discrete and continuous dynamics.

The second topic of this thesis concerns two optimization problems that arise in statistical inference. The first of these is that of maximum likelihood mixtures, and the second is a deconvolution technique. In both of these problems, we try to solve an optimization problem to find a discrete probability distribution. We often find that the solution we obtain has surprisingly few points of support. We explore this phenomenon empirically for each of these problems. For the case of maximum likelihood mixtures, we spend some time discussing the results of [Lindsay](#) that concern the number of points of support in the maximizing distribution. We then prove some new results which extend Lindsay's results. For the deconvolution problem, we propose using a new method to take advantage of this phenomenon, based on our empirical exploration. We use this method in our new R package 'deconvolve'.

# Declaration of Authorship

This is to certify that:

1. the thesis comprises only my original work towards the PhD except where indicated in the Preface,
2. due acknowledgement has been made in the text to all other material used,
3. the thesis is fewer than 100 000 words in length, exclusive of tables, maps, bibliographies and appendices.

Signed: 

Date: March 13, 2019

# *Acknowledgements*

Firstly, I would like to thank my supervisors Professor Peter Taylor, Professor Aurore Delaigle, and Associate Professor Tim Garoni. You have each been very supportive of me throughout my candidature for which I am most grateful. Your willingness to lend your expertise has been fundamental to the completion of this work. I would also like to thank my fellow office-mates with whom I have enjoyed plenty of laughs over the last four years.

Outside of the office I would like to thank both Alex's and my family for all the conversations, games, meals, and friendship that has made life outside the PhD so enjoyable. In particular, thank-you Dad for always being willing to help me navigate the academic and mathematical world.

My research was supported by the Australian Research Council through the Laureate Fellowship FL130100039, the Discovery Project DP140100125, and the ARC Centre of Excellence for Mathematical and Statistical Frontiers. I also received travel funds from the School of Mathematics and Statistics. I am grateful to all of the organisations that assisted in funding my PhD.

Finally, and most importantly, I would like to give a most sincere and heartfelt thank-you to my wife, Alex. You have been an unwavering support, and have never once faltered in your confidence that I was up to this task. Everything is better when I have you by my side, and writing this thesis was no exception. I love you so much, and look forward to all the challenges and adventures we will face together in the future.

# Contents

<b>Abstract</b>	<b>i</b>
<b>Declaration of Authorship</b>	<b>ii</b>
<b>Acknowledgements</b>	<b>iii</b>
<b>Contents</b>	<b>iv</b>
<b>List of Figures</b>	<b>vii</b>
<b>1 Introduction to this Thesis</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>I The Coupling Time for the Ising Heat-Bath Dynamics</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>2 Introduction</b>	<b>4</b>
2.1 The Ising model . . . . .	4
2.1.1 The phase transition . . . . .	5
2.2 Coupling from the past . . . . .	6
2.2.1 Ising heat-bath Glauber dynamics . . . . .	7
2.2.2 The coupling time . . . . .	8
2.2.3 Summary of CFTP . . . . .	9
2.2.4 Equivalence of discrete and continuous coupling time . . . . .	11
2.3 Information percolation . . . . .	15
2.3.1 Information percolation and cutoff for the stochastic Ising model . . . . .	15
2.3.2 The framework . . . . .	16
2.4 Compound Poisson approximation . . . . .	21
2.4.1 Application to our problem . . . . .	24
<b>3 The Coupling Time on the Cycle</b>	<b>26</b>
3.1 A new coupling on the cycle . . . . .	27
3.1.1 Update histories on the cycle . . . . .	29
3.2 Problem set-up . . . . .	30
3.3 Proof of Theorem 3.1 . . . . .	31
3.4 Additional lemmas . . . . .	36
3.4.1 Lemmas that hold on the cycle . . . . .	36
3.4.2 Lemmas that hold on a more general family of graphs . . . . .	46

<b>4</b>	<b>The Coupling Time on Vertex Transitive Graphs</b>	<b>48</b>
4.1	Information percolation in higher dimensions . . . . .	51
4.1.1	The magnetization . . . . .	52
4.2	Problem set-up . . . . .	54
4.3	Proof of Theorem 4.2 . . . . .	54
4.4	Additional lemmas . . . . .	59
<b>5</b>	<b>Conclusion to Part I</b>	<b>65</b>
<b>II</b>	<b>Efficient Optimization for Statistical Inference</b>	<b>67</b>
<b>6</b>	<b>Maximum Likelihood Location Mixtures</b>	<b>68</b>
6.1	Introduction . . . . .	68
6.2	Summary of Lindsay . . . . .	72
6.2.1	The likelihood curve . . . . .	72
6.2.2	All points separated by $\alpha$ . . . . .	73
6.2.3	An example likelihood curve . . . . .	74
6.2.4	Gradient characterization . . . . .	76
6.2.5	KKT conditions . . . . .	78
6.2.6	Additional results on $K_{\mathbf{x}}$ . . . . .	82
6.3	Empirical Results . . . . .	84
6.3.1	Method . . . . .	84
6.3.2	Flag graphs . . . . .	86
6.4	Results . . . . .	88
6.4.1	Results for $n = 2$ . . . . .	88
6.4.2	Proof of Theorem 6.8 . . . . .	89
6.4.3	Results for general $n$ . . . . .	94
6.4.4	Treating $\mathbf{x}$ as random . . . . .	97
6.5	Conclusion . . . . .	99
<b>7</b>	<b>Deconvolution</b>	<b>101</b>
7.1	Introduction . . . . .	101
7.1.1	Prior deconvolution methods . . . . .	102
7.2	Method for deconvolution when the error is unknown . . . . .	105
7.2.1	Problem Setup . . . . .	105
7.2.2	Estimator . . . . .	106
7.2.3	Estimator 3 . . . . .	107
7.2.4	Numerical Implementation . . . . .	109
7.2.5	Example . . . . .	110
7.2.6	Converting to continuous distribution . . . . .	111
7.3	Empirical Results . . . . .	112
7.3.1	R Package . . . . .	116
7.4	General observations and results . . . . .	119
7.5	Conclusion . . . . .	121
<b>8</b>	<b>Conclusion to Part II</b>	<b>123</b>

**Bibliography**

**124**

# List of Figures

2.1	Typical appearance of the update histories for two vertices on the cycle . . . . .	17
2.2	The update trace of $i$ . . . . .	19
2.3	The update sequence for a section of the cycle and the corresponding update history from vertex $i$ . . . . .	21
2.4	A non-oblivious update that shrinks the size of the update history . . . . .	22
3.1	The update sequence for a section of the cycle and the corresponding update history from each vertex using the new update rules. . . . .	30
6.1	A maximum likelihood location mixture of $n = 500$ points where the maximising mixing distribution, $Q$ , has only 6 points of support. . . . .	70
6.2	A simple example of a likelihood curve. . . . .	75
6.3	The geometric relationship between the likelihood curve (a) and the maximizing mixture density (b). . . . .	76
6.4	The gradient function and its associated mixing distribution and mixture. . . . .	77
6.5	The likelihood curve, $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x},f}$ , (solid line) along with the support hyperplane, $\mathcal{H}_{\hat{Q}}$ , (dashed line) that contains $\hat{\gamma}$ (blue point), and the points of contact with $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x},f}$ (magenta points). In this example $\mathbf{x} = (1, 2)$ and $f$ is a Cauchy density with scale parameter $1/2$ . . . . .	79
6.6	The likelihood curve, $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x},f}$ , (solid line) along with the support hyperplane, $\mathcal{H}_{\hat{Q}}$ , (dashed line) that contains $\hat{\gamma}$ (blue point). In this example $\mathbf{x} = (0, 0.4)$ and $f$ is a symmetric triangular density with width $1/2$ . . . . .	79
6.7	The curve $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x}}$ for three different $\mathbf{x}$ along with the boundary of $\text{conv}(\Gamma_{\mathbf{x}})$ for a normal component density with unit variance. . . . .	83
6.8	The unsimplified mixing distribution $Q^*$ that results from using more points of support than required when finding our maximizing mixture, as well as the equivalent simplified distribution, $Q$ , and the resulting mixture density, $f_Q(x)$ . . . . .	85
6.9	$K_{\mathbf{x}}$ as a function of $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, x_2)$ , for a normal component density with fixed variance $\sigma^2 = 1$ . . . . .	86
6.10	$K_{\mathbf{x}}$ as a function of $\mathbf{x} = (0, x_2, x_3)$ for two different component densities. . . . .	87
6.11	$(K_{\mathbf{x}}^{\text{norm}} + K_{\mathbf{x}}^{\text{Cauchy}})/2$ . . . . .	88
6.12	Plots of $f'_{\text{norm}}(x)$ against $-f'_{\text{norm}}(x-2\sigma)$ and $f'_{\text{Cauchy}}(x)$ against $-f'_{\text{Cauchy}}(x-2\gamma/\sqrt{3})$ for $\sigma = 1$ and $\gamma = 1$ . . . . .	90
6.13	The bound obtained in Theorem 6.11 tells us that $C_1$ must lie within the orange ellipse. The true shape of $C_1$ is given by the dark blue region. . . . .	95
6.14	The bound obtained in Theorem 6.12 tells us that $C_2$ must lie between the pairs of parallel orange lines. The true shape of $C_2$ is given by the middle blue shaded region. . . . .	97



---

7.1	A typical deconvolution following the method of Delaigle and Hall [15]. . .	110
7.2	A typical deconvolution following the method of Delaigle and Hall [15] with the continuous estimator $\hat{f}_X$ . . . . .	112
7.3	Four variations on the base example in Figure 7.2. . . . .	113
7.4	Comparison of results between fixed and variable probability mass locations.	115
7.5	Three more comparisons between moving masses and fixed masses. . . . .	117
7.6	The output of the ‘deconvolve’ package with data as in Figure 7.2 and using $m = 20$ moving masses. . . . .	118

# Chapter 1

## Introduction to this Thesis

Initially, this thesis was intended to be made up entirely of the contents of Part [II](#), along with what we hoped would be several significant further contributions to the study. However, the practicalities of a deadline, along with the challenging nature of the research, meant that the decision was made to augment this thesis with an essentially separate section of study. This is what makes up Part [I](#).

The reader should view these two parts as standalone topics, to be read independently. However, they are not without any commonality. Both are within the realm of stochastic mathematics, Part [I](#) being a study of a random variable constructed from a stochastic process, and Part [II](#) being a study of probability distributions that maximize certain statistical objective functions.

Part [I](#) is titled “The Coupling Time for the Ising Heat-Bath Dynamics.” In it, we consider the Ising heat-bath Glauber dynamics on both the 1-dimensional cycle in Chapter [3](#) and on certain transitive graphs in Chapter [4](#). These dynamics describe a continuous time Markov chain, whose states are assignments of spins (either  $+1$  or  $-1$ ) to each vertex in a given graph. We construct a coupling of two such Markov chains, one starting with all spins  $+1$  and one starting with all spins  $-1$ . The time it takes for these coupled chains to have the same spin configuration is the coupling time. Our main results show that the coupling time for these dynamics, when appropriately scaled, converges in distribution to a Gumbel distribution as the size of our graph goes to infinity. On the cycle, our results hold at all temperatures, and on certain transitive graphs, our results hold for sufficiently high temperatures. The two main tools we use are compound Poisson approximation, and the relatively new framework of information percolation, introduced by Lubetzky and Sly in [\[48\]](#). We use Chapter [2](#) to summarise these techniques, as well as to introduce various preliminaries.

Part II is titled “Efficient Optimization for Statistical Inference.” In this part, we look at two optimization problems that arise in statistical inference. In Chapter 6 we consider maximum likelihood mixtures where the components are parametrised by a single location parameter, and in Chapter 7 we look at a new method for deconvolution introduced by Delaigle and Hall in [15]. In each of these, we have to solve some optimization problem to find a discrete probability distribution. A key similarity between these two problems is that the optimal probability distribution is typically supported on a very small number of points. For the case of maximum likelihood mixtures, there are some results in the literature bounding the number of points in these optimal distributions; however, we consider cases in which these bounds can be considerable overestimates. We provide various new results which provide tighter bounds in some cases or extend known bounds to different classes of component densities. We compare these to empirical solutions. In the deconvolution case, the optimization problem is more complex than in the maximum likelihood setting, and obtaining and proving results concerning the number of points of support in the optimal distribution is difficult. However, we are still able to numerically explore the behaviour of these optimizing distributions and consider how we might take advantage of their properties.

## Part I

# The Coupling Time for the Ising Heat-Bath Dynamics

## Chapter 2

# Introduction

### 2.1 The Ising model

The Ising model is named after Ernst Ising who studied it in his 1924 thesis [29] under the supervision of Wilhelm Lenz, who introduced the model in [36]. It was originally motivated by the phenomenon of ferromagnetism but it has since found application to numerous other situations in both physics and other fields <sup>1</sup>.

The Ising model occupies a prominent position in the statistical physics literature. This is largely due to the existence of a phase transition; a sharp transition in the large scale behaviour of the model as a parameter crosses a critical value. The transition was first shown to exist by Rudolph Peierls [59] in what was the first proof of the existence of a phase transition for any model with purely local interactions in statistical mechanics. Additionally, the Ising model is both relatively simple, and also mathematically tractable in some non-trivial cases [57]. These qualities are rare among models with a phase transition and so the Ising model has become a staple for both studying phase transitions and testing new statistical mechanics techniques.

The model is a probability distribution on spin configurations - assignments of  $+1$  and  $-1$  spins to each vertex in a finite graph  $G = (V, E)$ . The set of all possible configurations is

$$\Omega = \{-1, +1\}^V \tag{2.1}$$

and for a particular configuration,  $\sigma \in \Omega$ , we refer to the spin of a particular vertex  $i \in V$  as  $\sigma[i]$ . Each configuration has an associated energy, given by

$$H_{G,\beta,h}(\sigma) = -\beta \sum_{ij \in E} \sigma[i]\sigma[j] - h \sum_{i \in V} \sigma[i] \tag{2.2}$$

---

<sup>1</sup>See [23, notes of Section 1.4.2] for a list of references concerning this.

where  $\beta \in [0, \infty)$  is the inverse temperature, and  $h \in \mathbb{R}$  is the magnetic field.

The Gibbs measure is the distribution on  $\Omega$  that characterises the Ising model and it is defined by

$$\pi_{G,\beta,h}(\sigma) \propto \exp(-H_{G,\beta,h}(\sigma)). \quad (2.3)$$

In everything that follows, we will be concerned only with the zero-field ( $h = 0$ ) Ising model. This gives us the slightly simpler form for the Gibbs measure,

$$\pi_{G,\beta}(\sigma) \propto \exp\left(\beta \sum_{ij \in E} \sigma[i]\sigma[j]\right), \quad \sigma \in \{-1, 1\}^V. \quad (2.4)$$

### 2.1.1 The phase transition

An in depth study of the Ising phase transition and its associated critical temperature will not be needed for this work. However, we will still wish to refer to it occasionally and so here we give a workable description of the phase transition on lattices.

Consider the Gibbs measure with zero-field (2.4) in the limits  $\beta \downarrow 0$  and  $\beta \uparrow \infty$ . It is easy to see that in the former limit, the measure is uniform across all configurations and in the latter limit, the measure assigns all weight to the constant configurations  $\sigma^- = (-1, -1, \dots, -1)$  and  $\sigma^+ = (+1, +1, \dots, +1)$ . This leads to the following overly simplistic description of the phase transition. It is an abrupt change in distribution that occurs as we increase the temperature; from distributions concentrated on states whose spins mostly agree, to distributions producing states which have roughly equal numbers of plus and minus spins.

To be slightly more concrete we define quantities called the magnetization and magnetization density. The *magnetization* on a volume  $\Lambda \subseteq V$  is defined as

$$M_\Lambda(\sigma) = \sum_{i \in \Lambda} \sigma[i]. \quad (2.5)$$

Normalizing this gives the *magnetization density*,  $M_\Lambda(\sigma)/|\Lambda|$ . On the  $d$ -dimensional torus with side length  $L$ ,  $G(L) = (\mathbb{Z}/L\mathbb{Z})^d$ , the quantity

$$m(\beta) = \lim_{L \rightarrow \infty} \mathbb{E}_\beta \left| \frac{M_{G(L)}(\sigma)}{|G(L)|} \right| \quad (2.6)$$

depends on the inverse temperature  $\beta$ . When  $d = 1$ ,  $m(\beta) = 0$  for any  $\beta$  and there is no phase transition [23]. However, when  $d > 1$ , there exists some critical  $\beta_c(d)$  such that  $m(\beta) = 0$  for  $\beta < \beta_c(d)$  and  $m(\beta) > 0$  for  $\beta > \beta_c(d)$  [23]. This  $\beta_c(d)$  is the critical inverse temperature at which we observe a phase transition.

## 2.2 Coupling from the past

One of the central challenges regarding the Ising model is how to efficiently sample from the Gibbs measure. Calculating the normalizing constant for (2.4), known as the partition function, is a #P-complete problem [31]. As such a direct approach to sampling is expected to be computationally intractable in general, and so other methods must be employed instead. One such method is Markov Chain Monte Carlo (MCMC). This involves constructing a Markov chain whose states are elements of  $\Omega$  and whose stationary distribution is given by (2.4). One can then obtain a sample by running this Markov chain for long enough that the output has distribution sufficiently close to (2.4). One difficulty in using MCMC is that one does not know a priori what constitutes "long enough". In principal, bounds on this time can be obtained, but in practise, proving these bounds can be challenging.

An alternative to classical MCMC called Coupling from the Past (CFTP) was introduced by Propp and Wilson [61]. Unlike MCMC, CFTP not only has an automatically determined running time, but it has the additional advantage of outputting exact samples from the stationary distribution. This does not come without a cost - CFTP has a random running time. Therefore, a key question towards evaluating the effectiveness of CFTP is understanding the distribution of its running time, that is, the *coupling time*.

In Chapters 3 and 4 we will investigate the coupling time for a particular Markov chain known as the Ising heat-bath Glauber dynamics, both on the cycle in Chapter 3 and on a certain class of vertex transitive graph in Chapter 4. Our main result in each chapter will be that, at appropriate temperatures, the distribution of the coupling time converges to a Gumbel distribution as the size of the graph increases.

Prior to this thesis, not much has been written about the coupling time for the heat-bath dynamics. In [12, Conjecture 7.1], the authors conjecture that on the  $d$ -dimensional lattice with side length  $L$ ,  $\mathbb{Z}_L^d$ , the coupling time of the Ising heat-bath process converges to a Gumbel distribution as  $L \rightarrow \infty$  at all temperatures above the critical temperature. This is supplemented by numerical evidence supporting their conjecture. Less directly, we also have the results by Propp and Wilson in [61, Section 5] which we can use to relate the *mixing time* of the heat-bath Glauber dynamics with tail bounds of the coupling time.

Given a parameter  $\epsilon$ , a Markov Chain  $Y_t$  with stationary distribution  $\pi$  has mixing time

$$t_{\text{MIX}}(\epsilon) = \inf \{t : d(t) \leq \epsilon\} \quad (2.7)$$

where

$$d(t) = \max_{y_0 \in \Omega} \|\mathbb{P}(Y_t \in \cdot | Y_0 = y_0) - \pi\|_{\text{TV}} \quad (2.8)$$

and where the total variation distance between two probability distributions  $\nu_1$  and  $\nu_2$  on  $\Omega$  is defined by

$$\|\nu_1 - \nu_2\|_{\text{TV}} = \max_{A \subseteq \Omega} |\nu_1(A) - \nu_2(A)| = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\sigma \in \Omega} |\nu_1(\sigma) - \nu_2(\sigma)|. \quad (2.9)$$

The results of [61, Theorem 5], within the setting of the discrete time Ising heat-bath process, state that the coupling time,  $T$ , satisfies

$$\frac{\mathbb{P}[T > k]}{n+1} \leq \bar{d}(k) \leq \mathbb{P}[T > k] \quad (2.10)$$

where

$$\bar{d}(k) = \max_{\mu_1, \mu_2} \|\mu_1^k - \mu_2^k\|_{\text{TV}}, \quad (2.11)$$

$n = |V|$ , and  $\mu^k$  is the distribution of the Markov chain at time  $k$  when started from a random state from distribution  $\mu$ . The relationship between  $\bar{d}$  and the mixing time is given by the result  $d(t) \leq \bar{d}(t) \leq 2d(t)$  [38, Lemma 4.10].

For the Ising heat-bath Glauber dynamics on the complete graph, a complete characterisation of the mixing time as a function of temperature is obtained in [20]. On other graphs, the mixing time is treated in [50] for sufficiently high temperature. More recently, a series of papers by Lubetzky and Sly ([46], [47], [48], and [49]) have established much sharper results concerning the mixing time on a wide class of graphs. Their methods form a key part of our proof and will be discussed further in Section 2.3.

### 2.2.1 Ising heat-bath Glauber dynamics

The continuous-time heat-bath Glauber dynamics for the Ising model is a Markov chain whose states are elements of  $\Omega$  and whose stationary distribution is given by (2.4). For a given graph,  $G = (V, E)$ , and a given inverse temperature,  $\beta$ , we can describe the dynamics as follows.

Initialize every vertex in  $V$  with a spin (for example, we could start in the all-plus configuration). To each vertex in  $V$  we give an independent rate-one Poisson clock. For  $\sigma \in \Omega$  and  $i \in V$ , define the probability

$$p_i(\sigma) = \frac{e^{\beta S_i(\sigma)}}{e^{\beta S_i(\sigma)} + e^{-\beta S_i(\sigma)}} \quad (2.12)$$



where

$$S_i(\sigma) = \sum_{j \sim i} \sigma[j] \quad (2.13)$$

is the sum of the spins of the neighbours of  $i$ , and  $j \sim i$  denotes that  $j$  is connected to  $i$  with some edge  $ij \in E$ . Let  $\sigma_t$  denote the spin configuration at time  $t$ . When the clock of vertex  $i$  rings at some time  $t$ , we update  $\sigma_t[i]$  to  $+1$  with probability  $p_i(\sigma_t)$ , and to  $-1$  otherwise.

The probability  $p_i(\sigma)$  is constructed so that it gives the probability that vertex  $i$  is  $+1$  if we sample it from  $\pi$  (2.4) conditioned on every other vertex having its spin fixed by  $\sigma$ . Note that this causes the dynamics to have  $\pi$  as its stationary distribution.

### 2.2.2 The coupling time

We now describe the two coupled chains from which we define the coupling time of the Ising heat-bath Glauber dynamics. It will prove convenient to first describe the discrete time chains along with their coupling and then discuss how to extend this coupling to the continuous time chain. In order to define the discrete time coupling, we introduce a random mapping representation.

Define  $f : \Omega \times V \times [0, 1] \mapsto \Omega$  via  $f(\sigma, i, u) = \sigma'$  where  $\sigma'[j] = \sigma[j]$  for  $j \neq i$  and

$$\sigma'[i] = \begin{cases} 1, & u \leq p_i(\sigma), \\ -1, & u > p_i(\sigma). \end{cases} \quad (2.14)$$

We note that  $f$  is monotonic, in the following sense. We define a partial ordering on  $\Omega$  by writing that  $\sigma \preceq \omega$  if  $\sigma, \omega \in \Omega$  are such that  $\sigma[i] \leq \omega[i]$  for all  $i \in V$  (and similarly for  $\sigma \succeq \omega$ ). Then for any fixed  $i \in V$  and  $u \in [0, 1]$ , if  $\sigma \preceq \omega$  then  $f(\sigma, i, u) \preceq f(\omega, i, u)$ .

Let  $\mathcal{V}$  and  $U$  be independent random variables, with  $\mathcal{V}$  uniform on  $V$  and  $U$  uniform on  $[0, 1]$ . Let  $(\mathcal{V}_k, U_k)_{k \geq 1}$  be an i.i.d. sequence of copies of  $(\mathcal{V}, U)$ . Define top and bottom discrete time chains,  $(\mathcal{T}_t)_{t \in \mathbb{N}}^{\text{DIS}}$  and  $(\mathcal{B}_t)_{t \in \mathbb{N}}^{\text{DIS}}$ , with initial states

$$\mathcal{T}_0^{\text{DIS}} = (1, 1, \dots, 1) \quad (2.15)$$

$$\mathcal{B}_0^{\text{DIS}} = (-1, -1, \dots, -1) \quad (2.16)$$

that update according to  $\mathcal{T}_{t+1}^{\text{DIS}} = f(\mathcal{T}_t^{\text{DIS}}, \mathcal{V}_k, U_k)$  and  $\mathcal{B}_{t+1}^{\text{DIS}} = f(\mathcal{B}_t^{\text{DIS}}, \mathcal{V}_k, U_k)$ .

We call the coupled process,  $(\mathcal{B}_t^{\text{DIS}}, \mathcal{T}_t^{\text{DIS}})_{t \in \mathbb{N}}$ , the *discrete Ising heat-bath coupling*. From the monotonicity of  $f$ ,  $\mathcal{T}_t^{\text{DIS}} \succeq \mathcal{B}_t^{\text{DIS}}$ , for all  $t \geq 0$ .

There are two ways we can think about extending this process to our continuous-time chain. The first way is to “continuize it at rate  $n$ ” [38]. To do this we use the discrete process as defined above but the time between each update is an independent exponential with rate  $n$ . That is, the continuous-time top and bottom chains are defined as  $(\mathcal{B}_t, \mathcal{T}_t) = (\mathcal{B}_{N_t}^{\text{DIS}}, \mathcal{T}_{N_t}^{\text{DIS}})$  where  $N_t$  is an independent rate  $n$  Poisson process. We call  $(\mathcal{B}_t, \mathcal{T}_t)_{t \geq 0}$  simply *the Ising heat-bath coupling*.

It is perhaps not immediately obvious that the continuous time top and bottom chains have the same dynamics we described in Section 2.2.1. This leads us to the second way of extending the discrete coupling to continuous time. Instead of updating the whole chain at rate  $n$  and choosing a vertex to update on the  $k$ th update via  $\mathcal{V}_k$ , we can think of each vertex in the chain as having its own independent rate 1 Poisson clock that tells it when to update. To clarify, whenever the Poisson clock of any vertex  $i$  rings at time  $t$ , we perform the  $k$ th update of the chain by setting  $\mathcal{V}_k = i$  and updating as in the discrete case via  $\mathcal{B}_t \leftarrow f(\mathcal{B}_t, \mathcal{V}_k, U_k)$  and  $\mathcal{T}_t \leftarrow f(\mathcal{T}_t, \mathcal{V}_k, U_k)$ .

From the memoryless property of the exponential, the sequence  $\mathcal{V}_1, \mathcal{V}_2, \dots$  that is generated is i.i.d. uniform on  $V$ . Since we have  $n$  vertices updating at rate 1, the whole chain is updating at rate  $n$ , and so our two methods of extending the discrete coupling to continuous time are equivalent.

This leads to a more descriptive explanation of the continuous time coupling: the top and bottom chains share the same rate-one Poisson clocks at each vertex, and upon updating that vertex, we share the same uniform random variable  $U$  between the two chains to determine whether to update to a plus or minus according to (2.14).

The *coupling time* of the Ising heat-bath process is the random variable

$$T = \inf \{t : \mathcal{T}_t = \mathcal{B}_t\}. \quad (2.17)$$

This is the main object of interest for our analysis. We will sometimes write  $T_n$  to make explicit the dependence on the size of the graph. Note that the coupling time is not just a property of the Ising heat-bath process, but also of the coupling we have chosen. In Section 3.1 we will make a change to the coupling we use to make the analysis easier. Some care will need to be taken to verify that the distribution of the coupling time is not affected by this change.

### 2.2.3 Summary of CFTP

We are now in a position to give a brief summary of the CFTP method, as it applies to the Ising heat-bath coupling. It should be noted that we include this summary of

CFTP for completeness. None of the details regarding the implementation of CFTP are required outside of this section. It serves only as motivation for the study of the coupling time.

Let  $f : \Omega \times V \times [0, 1] \mapsto \Omega$  and  $(\mathcal{V}, U)$  be as defined in Section 2.2.2. Let  $(\mathcal{V}_k, U_k)$  be an i.i.d. sequence of copies of  $(\mathcal{V}, U)$  and define

$$f_{-k} = f(\cdot, \mathcal{V}_k, U_k). \quad (2.18)$$

We construct the composition

$$F_{-k} = f_0 \circ f_{-1} \circ \cdots \circ f_{-k+1} \quad (2.19)$$

and define the *backwards coupling time* to be

$$T_{\text{BACK}} = \min\{k \in \mathbb{N} : F_{-k}(\mathcal{B}_0) = F_{-k}(\mathcal{T}_0)\}. \quad (2.20)$$

The state  $F_{-T_{\text{BACK}}}(\mathcal{B}_0) = F_{-T_{\text{BACK}}}(\mathcal{T}_0)$  is the output of the CFTP algorithm, and was shown by Propp and Wilson [61] to be an exact sample from the chain's stationary distribution. To gain some intuition as to why this is so, observe that by the monotonicity of  $f$ , if  $F_{-k}(\mathcal{B}_0) = F_{-k}(\mathcal{T}_0)$ , then  $F_{-k}(\sigma) = F_{-k}(\mathcal{B}_0) = F_{-k}(\mathcal{T}_0)$  for any  $\sigma \in \Omega$ . If we let  $\sigma_\pi$  be a random sample from the stationary distribution  $\pi$ , then  $F_{-k}(\sigma_\pi) = F_{-k}(\mathcal{B}_0) = F_{-k}(\mathcal{T}_0)$  must also have distribution  $\pi$ , which in our case is given by (2.4).

If we reverse the composition to construct

$$F_k = f_k \circ f_{k-1} \circ \cdots \circ f_1 \quad (2.21)$$

we can define the usual discrete time coupling time as

$$T_{\text{DIS}} = \min\{k \in \mathbb{N} : F_k(\mathcal{B}_0) = F_k(\mathcal{T}_0)\}. \quad (2.22)$$

The forwards coupling time,  $T_{\text{DIS}}$ , has the same distribution as the backwards coupling time,  $T_{\text{BACK}}$  [61], although in general,  $F_{T_{\text{DIS}}}(\mathcal{B}_0) = F_{T_{\text{DIS}}}(\mathcal{T}_0)$  does not have distribution  $\pi$ .

In practise, one runs the CFTP algorithm by starting both the top and bottom chains from some point in the past to time zero. This is repeated for increasingly more distant times in the past until both chains agree at time 0. The sequence of times at which one restarts this process need not be  $-1, -2, -3, \dots$ , rather, any monotonic natural sequence  $a_1, a_2, \dots$  can be used. See [38], [27], and [30] for further discussion.

### 2.2.4 Equivalence of discrete and continuous coupling time

At the beginning of this section we stated that the running time of CFTP has the same distribution as the coupling time. In fact, we have glossed over one important detail. Namely, CFTP is exclusively run in discrete time, and our coupling time is defined by the continuous time dynamics. Therefore, for our motivation to be reasonable, we would like to show some sort of equivalence between the distributions of the discrete and continuous coupling times. We do this via Proposition 2.1.

**Proposition 2.1.** *Let  $(N_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  be a sequence of positive integer-valued random variables, and  $(m_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  be a non-decreasing sequence of integers such that  $N_n \geq m_n$  for all  $n$  and  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} m_n = \infty$ . Let  $T(n)$  be the random time it takes for a rate  $\lambda$  Poisson clock to go off  $n$  times. That is,  $T(n) \sim \text{Erlang}(n, \lambda)$ .*

*Let  $a_n$  and  $b_n$  be positive deterministic sequences such that  $b_n/a_n \rightarrow \infty$  and*

$$\frac{b_n^2}{a_n^2} \log \frac{b_n}{a_n} = o(m_n). \quad (2.23)$$

*Define*

$$Y_n = \frac{T(N_n) - b_n}{a_n} \quad (2.24)$$

*and*

$$Z_n = \frac{N_n - \lambda b_n}{\lambda a_n}. \quad (2.25)$$

*Let  $X$  be a random variable with continuous distribution function. Then  $Y_n \xrightarrow{d} X$  if and only if  $Z_n \xrightarrow{d} X$ .*

To prove Proposition 2.1 we first require the following Lemma.

**Lemma 2.2.** *Let  $T(k)$  be the sum of  $k$  i.i.d. rate  $\lambda$  exponentials. For all  $\epsilon > 0$ ,*

$$\mathbb{P} \left( \left| \frac{T(k)\lambda}{k} - 1 \right| \geq \epsilon \right) \leq 2 \exp(-k\epsilon^2/4) \quad (2.26)$$

*Proof.* For all  $\epsilon > 0$ ,

$$\mathbb{P} \left( \left| \frac{T(k)\lambda}{k} - 1 \right| \geq \epsilon \right) = \mathbb{P} \left( \frac{T(k)\lambda}{k} \leq 1 - \epsilon \right) + \mathbb{P} \left( \frac{T(k)\lambda}{k} \geq 1 + \epsilon \right). \quad (2.27)$$

Since  $T(k)$  is the sum of  $k$  i.i.d. rate  $\lambda$  exponentials, its moment generating function is

$$M_k(t) = \left( \frac{\lambda}{\lambda - t} \right)^k, \quad t < \lambda, \quad (2.28)$$

(see [6, Example 21.3]). Using a Chernoff bound, for all  $0 < t < \lambda$ ,  $\epsilon > 0$ ,

$$\mathbb{P}\left(\frac{T(k)\lambda}{k} \geq 1 + \epsilon\right) = \mathbb{P}\left(T(k) \geq \frac{k}{\lambda}(1 + \epsilon)\right) \quad (2.29)$$

$$\leq \left(\frac{\lambda}{\lambda - t}\right)^k \exp\left(-\frac{tk}{\lambda}(1 + \epsilon)\right) \quad (2.30)$$

$$= \exp(k(\ln(\lambda/(\lambda - t)) - t(1 + \epsilon)/\lambda)). \quad (2.31)$$

Taking  $t = \epsilon\lambda/(1 + \epsilon)$ , which for any  $\epsilon > 0$  satisfies  $t \in (0, \lambda)$  as required, we have that for all  $\epsilon > 0$ ,

$$\mathbb{P}\left(\frac{T(k)\lambda}{k} \geq 1 + \epsilon\right) \leq \exp(k(\log(1 + \epsilon) - \epsilon)). \quad (2.32)$$

Similarly, for all  $t < 0$ ,  $\epsilon > 0$ ,

$$\mathbb{P}\left(\frac{T(k)\lambda}{k} \leq 1 - \epsilon\right) = \mathbb{P}\left(T(k) \leq \frac{k}{\lambda}(1 - \epsilon)\right) \quad (2.33)$$

$$\leq \left(\frac{\lambda}{\lambda - t}\right)^k \exp\left(-\frac{tk}{\lambda}(1 - \epsilon)\right) \quad (2.34)$$

$$= \exp(k(\ln(\lambda/(\lambda - t)) - t(1 - \epsilon)/\lambda)). \quad (2.35)$$

Since  $T(k) > 0$  almost surely we have

$$\mathbb{P}\left(\frac{T(k)\lambda}{k} \leq 1 - \epsilon\right) = 0 \quad (2.36)$$

when  $\epsilon \geq 1$ . Conversely, suppose  $0 < \epsilon < 1$  and take  $t = -\epsilon\lambda/(1 - \epsilon) < 0$ . Then

$$\mathbb{P}\left(\frac{T(k)\lambda}{k} \leq 1 - \epsilon\right) \leq \exp(k(\log(1 - \epsilon) + \epsilon)), \quad (2.37)$$

$$\leq \exp(k(\log(1 + \epsilon) - \epsilon)). \quad (2.38)$$

Since  $\log(1 + \epsilon) - \epsilon$  is well defined for all  $\epsilon > 0$  we then have, for any  $\epsilon > 0$ ,

$$\mathbb{P}\left(\frac{T(k)\lambda}{k} \leq 1 - \epsilon\right) \leq \exp(k(\log(1 + \epsilon) - \epsilon)). \quad (2.39)$$

Overall,

$$\mathbb{P}\left(\left|\frac{T(k)\lambda}{k} - 1\right| \geq \epsilon\right) \leq 2 \exp(k(\log(1 + \epsilon) - \epsilon)) \quad (2.40)$$

$$\leq 2 \exp(-k\epsilon^2/4) \quad (2.41)$$

for all  $\epsilon > 0$ . □

We now prove the main proposition.

*Proof of Proposition 2.1.* In order to prove either direction, it is sufficient to show (see [6, Theorem 25.4]) that for any  $\epsilon > 0$ ,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \mathbb{P}(|Y_n - Z_n| > \epsilon) = 0. \quad (2.42)$$

First note that

$$|Y_n - Z_n| = \left| \frac{T(N_n) - b_n}{a_n} - \frac{N_n - \lambda b_n}{\lambda a_n} \right| \quad (2.43)$$

$$= \left| \frac{T(N_n)}{a_n} - \frac{N_n}{\lambda a_n} \right| \quad (2.44)$$

$$= \left| \frac{T(N_n)\lambda}{N_n} - 1 \right| \frac{N_n}{\lambda a_n}. \quad (2.45)$$

So for any  $\epsilon > 0$

$$\mathbb{P}(|Y_n - Z_n| > \epsilon) \leq \mathbb{P}\left(\left|\frac{T(N_n)\lambda}{N_n} - 1\right| > \epsilon \frac{a_n}{4b_n}\right) + \mathbb{P}\left(\frac{N_n}{\lambda a_n} > \frac{4b_n}{a_n}\right). \quad (2.46)$$

We will show that both of the terms on the right hand side vanish as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . We start with the first of these.

Since  $N_n \geq m_n$ ,

$$\mathbb{P}\left(\left|\frac{T(N_n)\lambda}{N_n} - 1\right| > \epsilon \frac{a_n}{4b_n}\right) \leq \mathbb{P}\left(\sup_{k \geq m_n} \left\{\left|\frac{T(k)\lambda}{k} - 1\right| > \epsilon \frac{a_n}{4b_n}\right\}\right) \quad (2.47)$$

$$= \mathbb{P}\left(\bigcup_{k \geq m_n} \left\{\left|\frac{T(k)\lambda}{k} - 1\right| > \epsilon \frac{a_n}{4b_n}\right\}\right) \quad (2.48)$$

$$\leq \sum_{k=m_n}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}\left(\left|\frac{T(k)\lambda}{k} - 1\right| > \epsilon \frac{a_n}{4b_n}\right). \quad (2.49)$$

To apply Lemma 2.2, we need that  $\epsilon a_n/(4b_n) < 1$ . However, since  $a_n/b_n \rightarrow 0$ , we can ensure this holds by taking  $n$  large enough. Continuing,

$$\sum_{k=m_n}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}\left(\left|\frac{T(k)\lambda}{k} - 1\right| > \epsilon \frac{a_n}{4b_n}\right) \leq 2 \sum_{k=m_n}^{\infty} \exp\left(-k\epsilon^2 \frac{a_n^2}{64b_n^2}\right) \quad (2.50)$$

$$= 2 \frac{\exp(-\epsilon^2 a_n^2 (m_n - 1)/(64b_n^2))}{\exp(\epsilon^2 a_n^2/(64b_n^2)) - 1}. \quad (2.51)$$

Since  $x \leq \exp(x) - 1$  for  $x \geq 0$ , for sufficiently large  $n$ ,

$$2 \frac{\exp(-\epsilon^2 a_n^2 (m_n - 1) / (64b_n^2))}{\exp(\epsilon^2 a_n^2 / (64b_n^2)) - 1} \leq \frac{128b_n^2}{a_n^2 \epsilon^2} \exp(-\epsilon^2 a_n^2 (m_n - 1) / (64b_n^2)) \quad (2.52)$$

$$\leq 256 \frac{b_n^2}{a_n^2 \epsilon^2} \exp(-m_n \epsilon^2 a_n^2 / (64b_n^2)). \quad (2.53)$$

By (2.23), this goes to zero as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .

To bound the second term in (2.46), we will treat the two directions of the proof separately. Firstly, assume that  $Z_n \xrightarrow{d} X$ . Then note that

$$\mathbb{P}\left(\frac{N_n}{\lambda a_n} > \frac{4b_n}{a_n}\right) = \mathbb{P}\left(Z_n > 3 \frac{b_n}{a_n}\right) \quad (2.54)$$

and since  $b_n/a_n \rightarrow \infty$ , and  $X$  has a continuous distribution function,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \mathbb{P}\left(\frac{N_n}{\lambda a_n} > \frac{4b_n}{a_n}\right) = 0, \quad (2.55)$$

(see [6, Theorem 14.2, Lemma 2]) and so (2.42) holds.

Conversely, assume that  $Y_n \xrightarrow{d} X$ . Note that, if  $T(N_n)/a_n \leq c_n/2$  and  $|T(N_n)\lambda/N_n - 1| \leq 1/2$ , then  $N_n/(\lambda a_n) \leq c_n$ . So taking  $c_n = 4b_n/a_n$  we have for any  $c_n > 0$ ,

$$\mathbb{P}\left(\frac{N_n}{\lambda a_n} > \frac{4b_n}{a_n}\right) \leq \mathbb{P}\left(\frac{T(N_n)}{a_n} > \frac{2b_n}{a_n}\right) + \mathbb{P}\left(\left|\frac{T(N_n)\lambda}{N_n} - 1\right| > \frac{1}{2}\right) \quad (2.56)$$

$$= \mathbb{P}\left(Y_n > \frac{b_n}{a_n}\right) + \mathbb{P}\left(\left|\frac{T(N_n)\lambda}{N_n} - 1\right| > \frac{1}{2}\right). \quad (2.57)$$

As above, since  $b_n/a_n \rightarrow \infty$ , and  $X$  has a continuous distribution function, the first term vanishes as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . The second disappears since

$$\mathbb{P}\left(\left|\frac{T(N_n)\lambda}{N_n} - 1\right| > \frac{1}{2}\right) \leq \mathbb{P}\left(\left|\frac{T(N_n)\lambda}{N_n} - 1\right| > \epsilon \frac{a_n}{4b_n}\right) \quad (2.58)$$

for sufficiently large  $n$ . □

*Remark 2.3.* We apply Proposition 2.1 to the coupling time of the Ising heat-bath dynamics in the following way. Take  $N_n$  to be the discrete coupling time on a graph of size  $n$ . The continuous time coupling time is given by  $T(N_n)$ . Note that  $N_n \geq m_n = n$  since each vertex must be updated at least once for coupling to occur. Finally Theorems 3.1 and 4.2 establish the limiting distribution of the continuous-time coupling time using scaling and shifting sequences  $a_n$  and  $b_n$  whose ratio is

$$\frac{b_n}{a_n} = \mathcal{O}(\log n) \quad (2.59)$$

and thus (2.23) is satisfied. This means that, appropriately scaled, the discrete-time coupling time has the same limiting distribution as the continuous-time coupling time.

## 2.3 Information percolation

A cornerstone to the proofs contained in Chapters 3 and 4 is the framework of information percolation, introduced by Lubetzky and Sly in [48]. In this paper, Lubetzky and Sly managed to achieve much sharper results, in much more generality, regarding the mixing time for the Glauber dynamics for the Ising model than had been achieved before. In this section we provide a brief summary of their results before laying out the basic framework, in the context of the Ising heat-bath dynamics, that will be required for Chapters 3 and 4.

### 2.3.1 Information percolation and cutoff for the stochastic Ising model

*Cutoff* is the central phenomenon of study in Lubetzky and Sly's 2016 paper titled, 'Information percolation and cutoff for the stochastic Ising model'. A family of Markov chains  $(Y_t)$  indexed by  $n$  is said to exhibit cutoff if

$$t_{\text{MIX}}(\epsilon) = (1 + o(1))t_{\text{MIX}}(\epsilon'), \quad (2.60)$$

for any fixed  $0 < \epsilon, \epsilon' < 1$  (recall (2.7) for the definition of  $t_{\text{MIX}}$ ). A *cutoff window* is a sequence  $w_n = o(t_{\text{MIX}}(1/4))$  where

$$t_{\text{MIX}}(\epsilon) = t_{\text{MIX}}(1 - \epsilon) + \mathcal{O}(w_n) \quad (2.61)$$

for any  $0 < \epsilon < 1$ .

Historically, proving cutoff has proven to be highly challenging. In a survey on the topic, Diaconis [18] wrote 'proof of a cutoff is a difficult, delicate affair, requiring detailed knowledge of the chain, such as all eigenvalues and eigenvectors'. It is therefore worth noting the significant gap between the strength of the results regarding cutoff achieved using information percolation, and those that existed previously.

Previous to [48], the best result known for general graphs was that cutoff occurs with a  $\mathcal{O}(1)$  window in the simple case when  $\beta = 0$  [2]. However, no results were known for  $\beta > 0$ , despite a conjecture by Peres in 2009 [38, Section 23.2] that cutoff occurs on any sequence of transitive graphs when the mixing time is of order  $\log n$  (as one would expect when  $\beta < c_0$  for some  $c_0 > 0$  that depends on the sequence of graphs). On lattices, the



first results to appear were due to Lubetzky and Sly in 2013 who established cutoff up to the critical temperature for dimensions  $d \leq 2$  with a  $\mathcal{O}(\log \log n)$  window [46].

Using information percolation, Lubetzky and Sly proved the existence of cutoff for the continuous time Glauber dynamics for the Ising model with an  $\mathcal{O}(1)$  window on  $\mathbb{Z}^d$  for all temperatures up to the critical temperature. In a companion paper [49], they extended this result to include any graph with maximum degree  $d$  provided that  $\beta < \kappa/d$  for some absolute constant  $\kappa$ . Recently, information percolation has also been used to establish cutoff for the Swendsen-Wang dynamics on the lattice [54], suggesting that the technique is effective on a broader class of problems than simply Glauber dynamics for Ising.

### 2.3.2 The framework

At its core, information percolation is a way of tracking how the dependencies of the final spins of the Glauber heat-bath dynamics percolate through the graph over time. These dependencies are traced backwards through time from some designated time  $t_*$  on the space-time slab  $V \times [0, t_*]$  to create the update history (see Figure 2.1 for example). These histories are made in such a way so that, if for every  $j \in V$  no path exists connecting  $(i, t_*)$  to  $(j, 0)$ , then the spin of  $i$  does not depend on the initial state (and thus by symmetry, at time  $t_*$  vertex  $i$  takes  $+1$  and  $-1$  spins with equal probability). The main constructs used to create this history are the update sequence, and the update support function which we will now define.

#### 2.3.2.1 The update sequence

Recalling our random mapping representation from Section 2.2.2, we can encode an update of our coupled process with the tuple  $(\mathcal{V}, U, S)$ , where  $S$  is the time of the update,  $\mathcal{V}$  is the vertex that is updated, and  $U$  is the value of the uniform random variable that tells us whether  $\mathcal{V}$  is a plus or minus according to (2.14). The *update sequence* along an interval  $(t_0, t_1]$  is the set of these tuples with  $t_0 < S \leq t_1$ , ordered by  $S$  decreasing from  $t_1$ .

Let  $(Y_t)_{t \geq 0}$  be a copy of the continuous-time heat-bath Glauber dynamics starting in some state  $Y_0 \in \Omega$ . So  $Y_t = \mathcal{T}_t$  if  $Y_0 = (1, 1, \dots, 1)$  and  $Y_t = \mathcal{B}_t$  if  $Y_0 = (-1, -1, \dots, -1)$ . Given the state of  $Y$  at time  $t_0$ ,  $Y_{t_0}$ , the update sequence along  $(t_0, t_1]$  contains all the information we need to construct  $Y_{t_1}$ . In particular, given the update sequence along the interval  $(0, t_1]$ ,  $Y_{t_1}$  is a deterministic function of  $Y_0$ .



**Figure 2.1** – A section of the space-time slab  $V \times [0, t_*]$  along with a typical appearance of the update histories for two vertices on the cycle. Time runs vertically from bottom to top, and the vertices are represented by circles, laid out horizontally. If there is a path in the update history of  $v$  between points  $(u, t)$  and  $(v, t_*)$ , then the spin of  $v$  at time  $t_*$  depends on the spin of  $u$  at time  $t$ . In this example, since there is no path from vertex  $(i, t_*)$  to time 0, the final spin at  $i$  does not depend on the initial configuration whereas the final spin at  $j$  does.

### 2.3.2.2 The update support function

Given the update sequence along the interval  $(t_1, t_2]$ , the *update support function*,  $\mathcal{F}(A, t_1, t_2)$ , is the minimal set of vertices whose spins at time  $t_1$  determine the spins of the vertices in  $A$  at time  $t_2$ . That is,  $i \in \mathcal{F}(A, t_1, t_2)$  if and only if there exist states  $Y_{t_1}, Y'_{t_1} \in \{-1, +1\}^V$  that differ only at  $i$  and such that when we construct  $Y_{t_2}$  and  $Y'_{t_2}$  using the update sequence,  $Y_{t_2} \neq Y'_{t_2}$ .

In particular, if  $\mathcal{F}(i, 0, t) = \emptyset$  then the spin at vertex  $i$  at time  $t$  does not depend on the initial state and so for our coupled chains,  $\mathcal{B}_t[i] = \mathcal{T}_t[i]$ . As a consequence of the monotonicity of our coupling, we can make the stronger statement that  $\mathcal{T}_t[i] = \mathcal{B}_t[i]$  if and only if  $\mathcal{F}(i, 0, t) = \emptyset$  which of course means that

$$\mathbb{P}[\mathcal{T}_t[i] \neq \mathcal{B}_t[i]] = \mathbb{P}[\mathcal{F}(i, 0, t) \neq \emptyset]. \quad (2.62)$$

For ease of notation, we will often use the shorthand

$$\mathcal{H}_i(t) := \mathcal{F}(i, t, t_*) \quad (2.63)$$

where  $t_*$  is some target time that should be clear from context. We call this the *update support* of vertex  $i$  at time  $t$ . Tracing  $\mathcal{H}_i(t)$  backwards in time from  $t_*$  produces a subgraph of  $V \times [0, t_*]$  which we write as  $\mathcal{H}_i$  and which we call the *update history* of vertex  $i$ . To be slightly more precise, to produce  $\mathcal{H}_i$  we connect  $(j, t)$  to  $(j, t')$  if  $j \in \mathcal{H}_i(t)$  and there are no updates of  $j$  along  $(t', t]$  and we connect  $(j, t)$  to  $(j', t)$  if there was an update at  $(j, t)$ ,  $j \in \mathcal{H}_i(t)$ ,  $j' \notin \mathcal{H}_i(t)$ , and  $j' \in \mathcal{H}_i(t - \epsilon)$  for all sufficiently small  $\epsilon > 0$ .

Similarly, we also use

$$\mathcal{H}_A(t) := \mathcal{F}(A, t, t_*) \quad (2.64)$$

for the update history of a vertex set  $A$  at time  $t$  and  $\mathcal{H}_A$  for the update history of vertex set  $A$ . Note that

$$\mathcal{H}_A(t) = \bigcup_{i \in A} \mathcal{H}_i(t) \quad (2.65)$$

and

$$\mathcal{H}_A = \bigcup_{i \in A} \mathcal{H}_i. \quad (2.66)$$

### 2.3.2.3 The update function

It is usually non-trivial to construct the update support function from the update sequence. So in order to give some intuition to the definitions above, we describe another function which contains the update support and which is simple to construct. We define the *update function*,  $\mathcal{F}_{\text{UPD}}(A, t_1, t_2)$ , to be the set of all vertices that  $A$  can ‘reach’ through the update function. That is,  $i \in \mathcal{F}_{\text{UPD}}(A, t_1, t_2)$  if and only if there exists a subsequence of the updates,  $(\mathcal{V}_k, U_k, S_k)$ , such that  $t_1 < S_1 < S_2, \dots, \leq S_m$  and  $i, \mathcal{V}_1, \mathcal{V}_2, \dots, \mathcal{V}_m$  is a path connecting  $i$  to some vertex  $\mathcal{V}_m \in A$ .

Just as we traced the update support backwards through time to create the update history, we can also trace  $\mathcal{F}_{\text{UPD}}(i, t, t_*)$  backwards through time to create the analogous *update trace*,  $\mathcal{G}_i$ . It is clear that  $\mathcal{F}(A, t_1, t_2) \subseteq \mathcal{F}_{\text{UPD}}(A, t_1, t_2)$  since a vertex  $i$  can only affect the spins of  $A$  if there is a path of updates connecting it to  $A$ . Likewise we also have that  $\mathcal{G}_i \subseteq \mathcal{H}_i$ .

Consider how we can construct the update trace of a vertex  $i$  from some target time  $t_*$ . We have at our disposal the update sequence along  $(0, t_*]$  which is placed in order of decreasing time. If vertex  $i$  does not appear in the update sequence then we create a temporal edge between  $(i, t_*)$  and  $(i, 0)$  and our update history is complete. Otherwise,



**Figure 2.2** – The update trace of  $i$ . Each update  $(\mathcal{V}, U, t)$  in the update sequence is represented by a  $*$  at  $(\mathcal{V}, t)$ .

we create a temporal edge between  $(i, t_*)$  and  $(i, t_i)$  where  $t_i$  is the last time vertex  $i$  was updated. At this point we add spatial edges from  $(i, t_i)$  to  $(j, t_i)$  for each  $j \sim i$ . Then, we iterate this process for  $i$  and each of its neighbours starting at time  $t_i$  until every edge has reached time 0. In Figure 2.2 we have followed this procedure to show an example update trace for a single vertex on the cycle.

We turn now to discussing how the update history differs from the update trace. We first note that an update to vertex  $i$  removes it from the update support as we move backwards in time. This is because the updated spin at  $i$  is a function only of its neighbours (2.14). The second difference which we will now spend some time discussing is that it is possible for updates to occur that do not depend on neighbouring spins. These updates therefore cause temporal edges leading up to them to terminate without branching out to the neighbouring vertices. These type of updates are called *oblivious updates*. (These are not the only differences between the update history and the update trace; there are other ways in which vertices can be removed from the update support. See Figure 2.4 for an example).

#### 2.3.2.4 Oblivious updates

Roughly speaking, an update to a vertex is oblivious if we do not need to know the configuration of its neighbours to determine the spin of that vertex. More precisely, an

update,  $(\mathcal{V}, U, t)$ , is oblivious if and only if

$$f(\sigma, \mathcal{V}, U)[\mathcal{V}] = f(\sigma', \mathcal{V}, U)[\mathcal{V}] \quad (2.67)$$

for all  $\sigma, \sigma' \in \Omega$ , where  $f$  is as defined in (2.14).

Consider how these updates occur under our random mapping representation. Let  $\Delta_i$  denote the degree of a vertex  $i$ . Recalling (2.12),

$$\frac{e^{-\beta\Delta_i}}{e^{\beta\Delta_i} + e^{-\beta\Delta_i}} \leq p_i(\sigma) \leq \frac{e^{\beta\Delta_i}}{e^{\beta\Delta_i} + e^{-\beta\Delta_i}}, \quad (2.68)$$

with equality holding for the lower and upper limits when the neighbours have spins all minus and all plus respectively. So for a particular update  $(\mathcal{V}, U, t)$ , if  $U \leq \frac{e^{-\beta\Delta_{\mathcal{V}}}}{e^{\beta\Delta_{\mathcal{V}}} + e^{-\beta\Delta_{\mathcal{V}}}}$  then  $\mathcal{V}$  is updated to a plus regardless of the configuration of its neighbours. Hence  $(\mathcal{V}, U, t)$  is an oblivious update. Similarly, if  $U > \frac{e^{\beta\Delta_{\mathcal{V}}}}{e^{\beta\Delta_{\mathcal{V}}} + e^{-\beta\Delta_{\mathcal{V}}}}$  then  $\mathcal{V}$  is updated to a minus regardless of the configuration of its neighbours and hence  $(\mathcal{V}, U, t)$  is an oblivious update. It is easy to see that these are the only types of oblivious updates.

Given an update at vertex  $i$ , the probability that this update is oblivious is

$$\theta_i = 1 - \left( \frac{e^{\beta\Delta_i}}{e^{\beta\Delta_i} + e^{-\beta\Delta_i}} - \frac{e^{-\beta\Delta_i}}{e^{\beta\Delta_i} + e^{-\beta\Delta_i}} \right) \quad (2.69)$$

$$= 1 - \tanh(\beta\Delta_i). \quad (2.70)$$

If  $G$  is a  $\Delta$ -regular graph (as will be the case in the following chapters) then we can drop the subscript and write  $\theta = 1 - \tanh(\beta\Delta)$  for the probability of an oblivious update at each vertex.

As noted earlier, oblivious updates cause temporal edges leading to them in the update history to terminate. If  $j \in \mathcal{H}_i(t)$ , then an oblivious update  $(j, u, t)$  removes  $j$  from  $\mathcal{H}_i(t)$  without adding any of its neighbours. In Figure 2.3 we construct the update history from a single vertex  $i$  using the same update sequence as in Figure 2.2 but instead of representing each update with just a  $*$ , we give a little more information in the following way. Note that on the cycle, the function defined in (2.14) can be rewritten as

$$\sigma'[i] = \begin{cases} 1 & U \leq \theta/2, \\ \sigma[i-1] \vee \sigma[i+1] & \theta/2 < U \leq 1/2, \\ \sigma[i-1] \wedge \sigma[i+1] & 1/2 < U \leq 1 - \theta/2, \\ -1 & U > \theta/2. \end{cases} \quad (2.71)$$



**Figure 2.3** – The update sequence for a section of the cycle and the corresponding update history from vertex  $i$ . For this particular update sequence,  $i$  takes a final spin of  $+1$  regardless of the initial configuration.

We can therefore represent each update  $(\mathcal{V}, U, t)$  in the update sequence by placing at  $(\mathcal{V}, t)$  one of the symbols  $+$ ,  $\vee$ ,  $\wedge$ , or  $-$  chosen according to  $U$ . We then trace back from time  $t_*$ , branching to either side when we encounter a  $\vee$  or  $\wedge$ , and terminating whenever we encounter a  $+$  or  $-$ .

It is worth remarking that oblivious updates are not necessarily the only updates that can shrink the size of the update history of  $i$ . In Figure 2.4 we use an example from [48] that shows the update support collapsing down to a single vertex from a non-oblivious update. However, for our analysis, oblivious updates will be the only such updates we will be concerned with. Indeed, in Chapter 3 we will use a different coupling so that these are the only updates that shrink the size of the update history, and in Chapter 4 we will use an alternative construction that bounds the true update history, in which all updates are either oblivious or branch out to all  $\Delta$  neighbours.

## 2.4 Compound Poisson approximation

In addition to the framework of information percolation, we will also make use of compound Poisson approximation, as described in [3]. This paper reviews a number of methods by which approximations may be made. The specific method that we will employ is based on Stein's method for the compound Poisson distribution, introduced in [4].



**Figure 2.4** – [Example taken from [48]]. A non-oblivious update that shrinks the size of the update history. On the right is written the final spin of  $x_3$  as a function of the configuration at that time. The update  $x_3 \mapsto x_2 \vee x_4$  causes the entire function to collapse to  $x_4$ , and so removes  $x_1$  and  $x_3$  from the update history.

A compound Poisson distribution,  $\text{CP}(\lambda, \mu)$ , is the distribution of the sum of a rate  $\lambda$  Poisson number of independent random variables, each with distribution  $\mu$ . That is, a compound Poisson random variable can be defined by

$$\text{CP}(\lambda, \mu) = \mathcal{L} \left( \sum_{j=1}^M Y_j \right) \quad (2.72)$$

for any  $\lambda > 0$ , and any probability distribution  $\mu$  on  $\mathbb{N}$ , where the  $Y_j$  are independent and identically distributed with distribution  $\mu$  and are also independent of  $M \sim \text{Po}(\lambda)$ .

The goal of compound Poisson approximation is to bound the distance between the distribution of a random variable  $W$ , and some canonically chosen compound Poisson distribution. A common scenario, and the one which we address here, is that

$$W = \sum_{i \in V} X_i \quad (2.73)$$

for some countable index set  $V$ , where each  $X_i$  is a nonnegative integer valued random variable. The following approach to compound Poisson approximation is taken from [3, Section 2.2].

For each  $i \in V$ , partition  $V$  into subsets  $\{i\}$ ,  $B_i$ ,  $C_i$ , and  $D_i$  and set

$$U_i = \sum_{j \in B_i} X_j, \quad Z_i = \sum_{j \in C_i} X_j, \quad W_i = \sum_{j \in D_i} X_j. \quad (2.74)$$

so that for each  $i \in V$  we have the decomposition

$$W = X_i + U_i + Z_i + W_i. \quad (2.75)$$

For our approximation to be good, we want  $B_i$  to contain those  $X_j$  which strongly influence  $X_i$ ,  $D_i$  to contain those  $X_j$  which have a negligible effect on  $X_i$  and  $C_i$  to contain the remainder.

Using  $I[\cdot]$  to denote the indicator function, we now define the canonical parameters  $\lambda$  and  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$  by

$$\lambda = \sum_{i \in V} \mathbb{E} \left[ \frac{X_i}{X_i + U_i} I[X_i + U_i \geq 1] \right], \quad (2.76)$$

$$\mu_l = \frac{1}{l\lambda} \sum_{i \in V} \mathbb{E} [X_i I[X_i + U_i = l]], \quad l \geq 1. \quad (2.77)$$

These will be the parameters of the approximating compound Poisson distribution to  $W$ . We also define

$$\delta_1 = \sum_{i \in V} \sum_{k \geq 0} \mathbb{P}[X_i = 1, U_i = k] \mathbb{E} \left| \frac{\mathbb{P}[X_i = 1, U_i = k | W_i]}{\mathbb{P}[X_i = 1, U_i = k]} - 1 \right|, \quad (2.78)$$

$$\delta_4 = \sum_{i \in V} (\mathbb{E}[X_i Z_i] + \mathbb{E}[X_i] \mathbb{E}[X_i + U_i + Z_i]), \quad (2.79)$$

which we desire to be small for the compound Poisson approximation to be good.

We can bound the total variation distance between  $W$  and the canonically chosen compound Poisson using the following theorem, reworked from [3, CPA 1A] with bounds for the constants provided there substituted from [3, Equation 2.17].

**Theorem 2.4** ([3]). *Let  $W$ ,  $\lambda$ ,  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$ ,  $\delta_1$  and  $\delta_4$  be as defined above. Then*

$$d_{\text{TV}}(\mathcal{L}(W), \text{CP}(\lambda, \boldsymbol{\mu})) \leq (\delta_1 + \delta_4) e^\lambda. \quad (2.80)$$

Since the canonical parameter  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$  is constructed to only place mass on the positive integers, we have that

$$\mathbb{P}(\text{CP}(\lambda, \boldsymbol{\mu}) = 0) = \mathbb{P}(\text{P}(\lambda) = 0) \quad (2.81)$$

$$= e^{-\lambda}. \quad (2.82)$$

This gives us the following corollary of Theorem 2.4.



**Corollary 2.5.** *Let  $W$ ,  $\lambda$ ,  $\delta_1$  and  $\delta_4$  be as defined above. Then*

$$\left| \mathbb{P}(W = 0) - e^{-\lambda} \right| \leq (\delta_1 + \delta_4)e^\lambda. \quad (2.83)$$

### 2.4.1 Application to our problem

We will now give an overview of how we will apply compound Poisson approximation to the problem of finding the limiting distribution of the coupling time of the Ising heat-bath process. The exact implementation will depend on the class of graphs on which the heat-bath process is running, and so we leave some of the specifics for the following chapters.

For a given graph,  $G_L = (V, E)$ , in a given sequence of graphs,  $(G_L)_{L \geq 1}$ , we fix  $z \in \mathbb{R}$  and a time of interest

$$t_* = a_L z + d_L. \quad (2.84)$$

The specific choices for  $a_L$  and  $d_L$  depend on the sequence  $(G_L)_{L \geq 1}$ . We choose these such that for large enough  $L$ ,  $t_* > 0$ , and then only consider these  $L$ . For each  $i \in V$ , define the indicator

$$X_i = I[\mathcal{B}_{t_*}[i] \neq \mathcal{T}_{t_*}[i]] \quad (2.85)$$

and set

$$W = \sum_{i \in V} X_i. \quad (2.86)$$

For each  $i \in V$ , we partition  $V$  into the sets  $\{i\}$ ,  $B_i$ ,  $C_i$ , and  $D_i$  defined by

$$B_i = \{j \neq i : d(i, j) \leq b_L\}, \quad (2.87)$$

$$C_i = \{j \notin B_i \cup \{i\} : d(i, j) \leq c_L\}, \quad (2.88)$$

$$D_i = V \setminus (B_i \cup C_i \cup \{i\}), \quad (2.89)$$

where we use  $d(i, j)$  to denote the graph distance between vertices  $i$  and  $j$ . The specific choices for  $b_L$  and  $c_L$  again depend on the graph  $G_L$ .

We can now define  $U_i$ ,  $Z_i$ , and  $W_i$  as above, along with  $\lambda$ ,  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$ ,  $\delta_1$ , and  $\delta_4$ . We can then directly apply Theorem 2.4 to get that

$$d_{\text{TV}}(\mathcal{L}(W), \text{CP}(\lambda, \boldsymbol{\mu})) \leq (\delta_1 + \delta_4)e^\lambda. \quad (2.90)$$

To relate  $W$  to the coupling time, observe that  $W$  is zero precisely when  $T \leq t_*$  and so the events  $\{W = 0\}$  and  $\{T \leq t_*\}$  coincide. So using Corollary 2.5,

$$\left| \mathbb{P}(T \leq t_*) - e^{-\lambda} \right| \leq (\delta_1 + \delta_4)e^\lambda. \quad (2.91)$$

The bulk of the work is therefore in calculating  $\lambda$ , and in showing that  $\delta_1$  and  $\delta_4$  go to zero as  $L \rightarrow \infty$ . (Note that  $W, T, t_*, \lambda, \mu, \delta_1$ , and  $\delta_4$  all depend on  $L$  but we have omitted this in the notation for convenience).

## Chapter 3

# The Coupling Time on the Cycle

In this chapter we consider the Ising heat-bath Glauber dynamics (as described in Section 2.2.1) on the cycle  $G_n = (\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z})$ . The object of interest is the coupling time,  $T_n$ , which was defined in Section 2.2.2. To simplify the analysis we study another random variable, defined in Section 3.1, which has the same distribution as  $T_n$ . The main result is Theorem 3.1 which establishes that  $T_n$  converges in distribution to a Gumbel distribution at all temperatures. This confirms, for  $d = 1$ , a conjecture by Collevocchio et al. that the coupling time of the Ising heat-bath process on the lattice  $G_L = (\mathbb{Z}/L\mathbb{Z})^d$  converges to a Gumbel distribution as  $L \rightarrow \infty$  for all  $\beta < \beta_c$  [12, Conjecture 7.1] (We treat higher dimensions, and more generally any vertex transitive graphs, in Chapter 4). Of course, in one dimension, all temperatures are part of the high temperature regime [23], and our result holds for any inverse-temperature  $\beta$ .

There is some intuition behind why we might expect that the coupling time converges to a Gumbel distribution. It is based on the belief that when the temperature is in the high-temperature regime, the dynamics behave qualitatively as if  $\beta = 0$ . In the  $\beta = 0$  case, the spins update independently of their neighbours, and thus the top and bottom chains can be coupled so that they agree on each vertex that has been updated. The coupling time is then precisely the time it takes for each vertex to be updated. This corresponds to the coupon collector's problem, which is known to have a Gumbel limit [22].

As mentioned in Section 2.2.3, the coupling time is of practical interest since its distribution is the same as that of the running time of the coupling from the past (CFTP) algorithm. Our result shows that when running the Glauber heat-bath dynamics for the Ising model on a large enough cycle, the running time of CFTP can be approximated by a Gumbel distribution. We note that even though one is typically more interested in the Ising model on lattices of dimension at least two (so that there exists a phase transition),

the one dimensional case proves to be a useful test case for the proof techniques. Furthermore, the applicability of Theorem 3.1 to the full high temperature regime justifies a treatment separate to that of the more general case considered in Chapter 4, the proof of which holds only for sufficiently high temperatures.

**Theorem 3.1.** *Let  $T_n$  be the coupling time for the continuous-time Ising heat-bath Glauber dynamics for the zero-field ferromagnetic Ising model on the cycle  $(\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z})$ . Then for any  $z \in \mathbb{R}$ , and at any inverse-temperature  $\beta$ ,*

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \mathbb{P} \left[ T_n < \frac{z + \ln n}{\theta} \right] = e^{-C_\theta e^{-z}}, \quad (3.1)$$

where  $\theta = 1 - \tanh(2\beta)$  and  $C_\theta$  is a positive constant satisfying

$$\frac{1}{2\sqrt{\frac{4}{\theta} - 3} - 1} \leq C_\theta \leq 1. \quad (3.2)$$

The proof of Theorem 3.1 will be given in Section 3.3 after the essential preliminaries are presented. In Section 3.1 we describe some modified dynamics and show that the coupling time we construct from these has the same distribution as the coupling time defined in Section 2.2.2. Then in Section 3.2 we outline the overall approach to the proof and define some essential quantities. Finally, Section 3.4 contains additional lemmas that are used in Section 3.3.

### 3.1 A new coupling on the cycle

On the cycle, we will use a different coupling of  $\mathcal{T}_t$  and  $\mathcal{B}_t$  via a new random mapping representation that will replace the one from Section 2.2.2. This simplifies our update histories greatly by ensuring that each of the update histories never contains more than one vertex at any one time. However, we must be cautious. The coupling time is not just a property of the heat-bath dynamics, but also of the specific coupling we chose. Hence, we first verify that switching to our new rules does not change the distribution of  $T_n$ .

The new random mapping representation is defined using almost exactly the same construction as in Section 2.2.2. The one difference is that we replace (2.14) as follows. When vertex  $i$  updates, instead of comparing  $U$  to the probability  $p_i(\sigma)$  to determine

$\mathbb{P}[(\mathcal{T}_t[i]', \mathcal{B}_t[i]') = \cdot]$		(1,1)	(1,-1)	(-1,-1)
$\mathcal{T}_t = \cdot$	$\mathcal{B}_t = \cdot$			
$(\dots, 1, \mathcal{T}_t[i], 1, \dots)$	$(\dots, 1, \mathcal{B}_t[i], 1, \dots)$	$1 - \theta$	0	$\frac{\theta}{2}$
$(\dots, 1, \mathcal{T}_t[i], 1, \dots)$	$(\dots, 1, \mathcal{B}_t[i], -1, \dots)$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1-\theta}{2}$	$\frac{\theta}{2}$
$(\dots, 1, \mathcal{T}_t[i], 1, \dots)$	$(\dots, -1, \mathcal{B}_t[i], 1, \dots)$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1-\theta}{2}$	$\frac{\theta}{2}$
$(\dots, 1, \mathcal{T}_t[i], 1, \dots)$	$(\dots, -1, \mathcal{B}_t[i], -1, \dots)$	$\frac{\theta}{2}$	$1 - \theta$	$\frac{\theta}{2}$
$(\dots, 1, \mathcal{T}_t[i], -1, \dots)$	$(\dots, 1, \mathcal{B}_t[i], -1, \dots)$	$\frac{1}{2}$	0	$\frac{1}{2}$
$(\dots, 1, \mathcal{T}_t[i], -1, \dots)$	$(\dots, -1, \mathcal{B}_t[i], -1, \dots)$	$\frac{\theta}{2}$	$\frac{1-\theta}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$
$(\dots, -1, \mathcal{T}_t[i], 1, \dots)$	$(\dots, -1, \mathcal{B}_t[i], 1, \dots)$	$\frac{1}{2}$	0	$\frac{1}{2}$
$(\dots, -1, \mathcal{T}_t[i], 1, \dots)$	$(\dots, -1, \mathcal{B}_t[i], -1, \dots)$	$\frac{\theta}{2}$	$\frac{1-\theta}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$
$(\dots, -1, \mathcal{T}_t[i], -1, \dots)$	$(\dots, -1, \mathcal{B}_t[i], -1, \dots)$	$\frac{\theta}{2}$	0	$1 - \theta$

**Table 3.1** – Probabilities of updating from  $(\mathcal{T}_t, \mathcal{B}_t)$  to  $(\mathcal{T}_t', \mathcal{B}_t')$  given vertex  $i$  updates at time  $t$ .

the new spin, we instead chose a new spin  $\sigma_i'$  via

$$\sigma_i' = \begin{cases} +1 & U < \theta/2, \\ \sigma_{i-1} & \theta/2 \leq U < 1/2, \\ \sigma_{i+1} & 1/2 \leq U < 1 - \theta/2, \\ -1 & U \geq 1 - \theta/2. \end{cases} \quad (3.3)$$

where  $U \in [0, 1]$  is an independent uniform random variable as before. It is easy to see that these update rules give rise to the same transition rates as those under (2.14). To show that the coupling time is unchanged, it is sufficient to verify that the joint jump probabilities of  $(\mathcal{T}_t[i], \mathcal{B}_t[i])$  are unchanged for each possible configuration of spins of vertices  $i - 1$  and  $i + 1$ . There are only nine possible configurations for the two neighbours of  $i$  in the top and bottom chain since  $\mathcal{B}_t[i] \leq \mathcal{T}_t[i], \forall t$ . Likewise, there are only three possible configurations for the updated spins  $(\mathcal{T}_t[i]', \mathcal{B}_t[i'])$ . Hence, given vertex  $i$  updates at time  $t$ , we can easily calculate all the required jump probabilities as shown in Table 3.1. These are unchanged whether using (2.14) or (3.3) and so the new rules do not change the coupled dynamics.

### 3.1.1 Update histories on the cycle

Under the update rules in (3.3), each time a vertex is updated, it is either an oblivious update with probability  $\theta$ , or it takes the spin of a uniformly chosen neighbour. Unlike the histories considered earlier (for example Figure 2.3), this time a non-oblivious update does not cause the history to branch out to both its neighbours. Rather, given a non-oblivious update to some vertex  $v$ , we only need to know the spins of one of its neighbours to update it (the left spin if  $U < 1/2$  or the right if  $U \geq 1/2$ ). So the history simply moves either right or left without branching. As before, encountering an oblivious update causes  $\mathcal{H}_i$  to terminate.

Let us give an explicit construction for the update histories just described. Let  $N_t$  be the rate  $n$  Poisson process used to continuize the discrete process and let  $(\mathcal{V}_k, U_k)_{k \geq 1}$  be the discrete noise sequence (as in Section 2.2.2). For each vertex  $i \in V$  define the thinned processes,

$$K_t^i = \#\{k \leq N_t : \mathcal{V}_k = i, U_k \in [0, \theta/2) \cup (1 - \theta/2, 1]\} \quad (3.4)$$

$$L_t^i = \#\{k \leq N_t : \mathcal{V}_k = i, U_k \in [\theta/2, 1/2)\} \quad (3.5)$$

$$R_t^i = \#\{k \leq N_t : \mathcal{V}_k = i, U_k \in [1/2, 1 - \theta/2)\}. \quad (3.6)$$

The process  $K_t^i$  is Poisson with rate  $\theta$  and gives the times when vertex  $i$  has an oblivious update. The processes  $L_t^i$  and  $R_t^i$  are Poisson with rate  $(1 - \theta)/2$  and give the times when  $\sigma_i$  is replaced by  $\sigma_{i-1}$  and  $\sigma_{i+1}$  respectively.

The collection of  $K_t^i$ ,  $L_t^i$  and  $R_t^i$  for every  $i \in V$  forms an encoding of the update sequence and may be represented graphically as follows. Place an  $\times$  at every  $(i, K_t^i) \in V \times [0, t_*]$ . Draw a directed edge  $(i, L_t^i) \rightarrow (i-1, L_t^i)$  for every  $L_t^i$  and draw a directed edge  $(i, R_t^i) \rightarrow (i+1, R_t^i)$  for every  $R_t^i$ . To construct the update histories, trace back in time from  $t_*$  from each vertex, making turns along directed horizontal edges, and killing the process at any  $\times$ . An example of this graphical representation along with the update histories is shown in Figure 3.1.

Following the history of a single vertex  $i$  backwards in time from  $t_*$ , we trace out a continuous-time random walk which moves left at rate  $(1 - \theta)/2$ , and moves right at rate  $(1 - \theta)/2$ . The walk survives until it encounters a point from  $K_t^j$ ,  $j = \mathcal{H}_i(t)$ , at which point it terminates. From the memoryless property of the exponential waiting times of  $K_t^j$ , and since  $K_t^j$  is independent of  $K_t^k$  for any two vertices  $j \neq k$ , we have that the time until a single history dies is exponential with rate  $\theta$ . This immediately gives us the following probability which we will use repeatedly in what follows. Recalling (2.62),

$$\mathbb{P}[\mathcal{B}_{t_*}[i] \neq \mathcal{T}_{t_*}[i]] = \mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_i(0) \neq \emptyset] = e^{-\theta t_*}. \quad (3.7)$$



**Figure 3.1** – The update sequence for a section of the cycle represented by the thinned Poisson processes  $K_t^i$  ( $\times$ ),  $L_t^i$  (left arrows), and  $R_t^i$  (right arrows) for each vertex. The corresponding update histories are overlaid in blue.

*Remark 3.2.* The graphical representation described here follows the standard graphical representation for interacting particle systems. See [40, Chapter 3, Section 6] for an overview of these representations. In particular, our graphical representation for the Ising heat-bath dynamics on the cycle (and therefore the dynamics themselves) is exactly equivalent to that of the noisy voter model, studied in [25]. This equivalence does not hold for the Ising heat-bath dynamics on higher dimensional tori.

## 3.2 Problem set-up

In order to prove Theorem 3.1, we will use the method sketched out in Section 2.4.1. Here we provide the specific choices for the various quantities that were left unspecified there. The graph of interest here is of course  $G_n = (\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z})$ .

Fix  $z \in \mathbb{R}$  and set

$$t_* = (z + \ln n)/\theta. \quad (3.8)$$

For any fixed  $z \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $t_* > 0$  for all sufficiently large  $n$  and we only consider such  $n$  in what follows. We define  $X_i$  and  $W$  as in Section 2.4.1 using this choice of  $t_*$  and note that from (3.7) we get

$$\mathbb{P}[X_i = 1] = e^{-\theta t_*} = \frac{e^{-z}}{n}. \quad (3.9)$$

The vertex sets  $B_i, C_i$ , and  $D_i$  are chosen by

$$B_i = \{j \neq i : d(i, j) \leq b_n\}, \quad (3.10)$$

$$C_i = \{j \notin B_i \cup \{i\} : d(i, j) \leq c_n\}, \quad (3.11)$$

$$D_i = V \setminus (B_i \cup C_i \cup \{i\}), \quad (3.12)$$

with  $b_n = \ln(n)$  and  $c_n = \ln^2(n)$ . We then define  $U_i, Z_i, W_i, \lambda, \mu, \delta_1$ , and  $\delta_4$  as in Section 2.4.1 using these particular choices for  $B_i, C_i$ , and  $D_i$ . From (2.91), we get the following corollary of Theorem 2.4.

**Corollary 3.3.** *Let  $T_n$  be the coupling time of the continuous-time heat-bath Glauber dynamics for the zero-field Ising model at inverse-temperature  $\beta$  on the cycle  $\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$  and let  $\delta_1, \delta_4$  and  $\lambda$  be as defined above. Then*

$$\left| \mathbb{P} \left[ T_n \leq \frac{z + \ln(n)}{\theta} \right] - e^{-\lambda} \right| \leq (\delta_1 + \delta_4)e^\lambda, \quad (3.13)$$

where  $\theta = 1 - \tanh(2\beta)$ .

### 3.3 Proof of Theorem 3.1

In this section we use Corollary 3.3 to prove Theorem 3.1 by bounding  $\lambda$  and proving that it converges, and by showing that  $\delta_1$  and  $\delta_4$  go to zero as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . This is done in Lemmas 3.4, 3.5, 3.7, and 3.8 respectively. The proofs of these require some additional lemmas concerning properties of the update histories which have been deferred to Section 3.4.

We begin by bounding  $\lambda$ .

**Lemma 3.4.** *Using the above set-up*

$$\limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \lambda \leq e^{-z} \quad (3.14)$$

and

$$\liminf_{n \rightarrow \infty} \lambda \geq C_\theta e^{-z} \quad (3.15)$$

for some

$$C_\theta \in \left[ \frac{1}{2\sqrt{\frac{4}{\theta} - 3 - 1}}, 1 \right]. \quad (3.16)$$



*Proof.* Beginning with the definition of  $\lambda$ , we have

$$\lambda = \sum_{i \in V} \mathbb{E} \left[ \frac{X_i}{X_i + U_i} I[X_i + U_i \geq 1] \right] \quad (3.17)$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^n \mathbb{P}(X_i = 1) \mathbb{E} \left[ \frac{1}{1 + U_i} \middle| X_i = 1 \right] \quad (3.18)$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{e^{-z}}{n} \mathbb{E} \left[ \frac{1}{1 + U_i} \middle| X_i = 1 \right] \quad (3.19)$$

$$= e^{-z} \mathbb{E} \left[ \frac{1}{1 + U_i} \middle| X_i = 1 \right], \quad (3.20)$$

where we have used that  $X_i$  is either zero or one, (3.9), and the transitivity of the graph in each step respectively. Since  $U_i$  is non-negative,

$$\mathbb{E} \left[ \frac{1}{1 + U_i} \middle| X_i = 1 \right] \leq 1, \quad (3.21)$$

and we therefore obtain the upper bound.

By Jensen's inequality,

$$\mathbb{E} \left[ \frac{1}{1 + U_i} \middle| X_i = 1 \right] \geq \frac{1}{1 + \mathbb{E}[U_i | X_i = 1]}. \quad (3.22)$$

Now

$$\mathbb{E}[U_i | X_i = 1] = \sum_{j \in B_i} \mathbb{P}[X_j = 1 | X_i = 1] \quad (3.23)$$

$$= \sum_{k=1}^{\lfloor b_n \rfloor} \sum_{j \in \{i-k, i+k\}} \mathbb{P}[X_j = 1 | X_i = 1] \quad (3.24)$$

$$= 2 \sum_{k=1}^{\lfloor b_n \rfloor} \mathbb{P}[X_{i+k} = 1 | X_i = 1], \quad (3.25)$$

where we have used the symmetry of  $X_{i+k}$  and  $X_{i-k}$  in the last step. From Lemma 3.9,

$$\mathbb{E}[U_i | X_i = 1] \leq 2 \sum_{k=1}^{\lfloor b_n \rfloor} \left( \frac{e^{-z}}{n} + 2 \left( \frac{2 - \theta - \sqrt{\theta(4 - 3\theta)}}{2 - 2\theta} \right)^k \right) \quad (3.26)$$

$$< 2 \sum_{k=1}^{\lfloor b_n \rfloor} \frac{e^{-z}}{n} + 4 \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \left( \frac{2 - \theta - \sqrt{\theta(4 - 3\theta)}}{2 - 2\theta} \right)^k \quad (3.27)$$

$$= \frac{2\lfloor b_n \rfloor}{n} e^{-z} + 2 \left( \sqrt{\frac{4}{\theta}} - 3 - 1 \right). \quad (3.28)$$

Finally, as  $n \rightarrow \infty$  the first term vanishes and

$$\liminf_{n \rightarrow \infty} \mathbb{E} \left[ \frac{1}{1 + U_i} \middle| X_i = 1 \right] \geq \frac{1}{2\sqrt{\frac{4}{\theta} - 3} - 1}, \quad (3.29)$$

giving us the lower bound.  $\square$

Having bounded  $\lambda$ , we now turn to proving that it converges. Up until this point, we have chosen in our notation of several variables to omit references to their dependence on  $n$ . However, it will prove useful here, and in Lemma 3.10 in the next section, to use a superscript on some variables to make this dependence explicit.

**Lemma 3.5.** *The limit of  $\lambda^n$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$  exists.*

*Proof.* From Lemma 3.10 and 3.6, along with the fact that  $0 \leq \mathbb{P}(U_i^n \leq k | X_i^n = 1) \leq 1$ , we have that  $U_i^n | X_i^n = 1$  converges in distribution. Via the Portmanteau Theorem [6, Theorem 25.8] we immediately obtain that

$$\lambda^n = e^{-z} \mathbb{E} \left[ \frac{1}{1 + U_i^n} \middle| X_i^n = 1 \right] \quad (3.30)$$

converges.  $\square$

**Lemma 3.6.** *Let  $(c_n)_n$  be a sequence of real numbers, with  $c_n \geq 0$  for all  $n$  and  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} c_n = 0$ . Let  $(a_n)_n$  be a sequence of real numbers such that for all  $m \in \mathbb{N}$ , we have  $a_n - a_{n+m} \geq -c_n$ .*

*If  $|a_n|$  is uniformly bounded, then  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n$  exists and is finite.*

*Proof.* Since  $|a_n|$  is uniformly bounded,  $\liminf_n a_n$  and  $\limsup_n a_n$  both exist and are finite. Let  $(n_k)_k$  and  $(l_k)_k$  be two increasing sequences of natural numbers such that  $\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} a_{n_k} = \liminf_n a_n$ ,  $\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} a_{l_k} = \limsup_n a_n$ , and  $n_k < l_k$  for all  $k$ . We have that

$$a_{n_k} - a_{n_k + (l_k - n_k)} \geq -c_{n_k} \quad (3.31)$$

for all  $k$ . Hence

$$\liminf_n a_n - \limsup_n a_n \geq 0 \quad (3.32)$$

and so the limit exists.  $\square$

The next two lemmas prove that  $\delta_1$  and  $\delta_4$  go to zero as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . Since from Lemma 3.4 we know that  $\lambda$  is bounded above by a constant, this is enough for the right hand size

of (3.13) to go to zero as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . In the following proofs we use the notation  $B(i, l)$  to mean the set of vertices at distance at most  $l$  from vertex  $i$ .

**Lemma 3.7.** *Let  $\delta_1$  be as defined above in (2.78). Then*

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \delta_1 = 0. \quad (3.33)$$

*Proof.* Starting with the definition of  $\delta_1$ , we have

$$\delta_1 = \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{k=0}^{2\lfloor b_n \rfloor} \mathbb{P}[X_i = 1, U_i = k] \mathbb{E} \left| \frac{\mathbb{P}[X_i = 1, U_i = k | W_i]}{\mathbb{P}[X_i = 1, U_i = k]} - 1 \right| \quad (3.34)$$

$$= n \sum_{k=0}^{2\lfloor b_n \rfloor} \mathbb{E} \left| \mathbb{P}[X_i = 1, U_i = k | W_i] - \mathbb{P}[X_i = 1, U_i = k] \right| \quad (3.35)$$

by the transitivity of the cycle. Define the events

$$A_1 = \{\exists j \in B_i \cup \{i\}, \exists t \in [0, t_*] : \mathcal{H}_j(t) \not\subseteq B(i, (c_n + b_n)/2)\} \quad (3.36)$$

and

$$A_2 = \{\exists j \in D_i, \exists t \in [0, t_*] : \mathcal{H}_j(t) \cap B(i, (c_n + b_n)/2) \neq \emptyset\} \quad (3.37)$$

as well as their intersection

$$A = A_1 \cap A_2. \quad (3.38)$$

From Lemma 3.15,

$$\mathbb{P}[X_i = 1, U_i = j | A^c, W_i] = \mathbb{P}[X_i = 1, U_i = j | A^c]. \quad (3.39)$$

Continuing on from (3.35), we split the probabilities into

$$\delta_1 = n \sum_{k=0}^{2\lfloor b_n \rfloor} \mathbb{E} \left| \mathbb{P}[X_i = 1, U_i = k | W_i, A] \mathbb{P}[A | W_i] - \mathbb{P}[X_i = 1, U_i = k | A] \mathbb{P}[A] + \right. \quad (3.40)$$

$$\left. \mathbb{P}(X_i = 1, U_i = k | A^c) (\mathbb{P}[A^c | W_i] - \mathbb{P}[A^c]) \right|$$

$$\leq n(2\lfloor b_n \rfloor + 1) \mathbb{E} [|\mathbb{P}[A | W_i] + \mathbb{P}[A] + |\mathbb{P}[A^c | W_i] - \mathbb{P}[A^c]|] \quad (3.41)$$

$$= n(2\lfloor b_n \rfloor + 1) \mathbb{E} [|\mathbb{P}[A | W_i] + \mathbb{P}[A] + |1 - \mathbb{P}[A | W_i] - (1 - \mathbb{P}[A])|] \quad (3.42)$$

$$\leq n(2\lfloor b_n \rfloor + 1) \mathbb{E} [\mathbb{P}[A | W_i] + \mathbb{P}[A] + \mathbb{P}[A | W_i] + \mathbb{P}[A]] \quad (3.43)$$

$$= 2n(2\lfloor b_n \rfloor + 1) (\mathbb{E}[\mathbb{P}[A | W_i]] + \mathbb{P}[A]) \quad (3.44)$$

$$= 4n(2\lfloor b_n \rfloor + 1) \mathbb{P}[A]. \quad (3.45)$$

For  $A_1$  to hold, we must have a history  $\mathcal{H}_j$  that extends from a distance of no more than  $b_n$  from  $i$  to a distance of at least  $(b_n + c_n)/2$  from  $i$ . That is, it must extend a distance of at least  $(c_n - b_n)/2$ . For  $A_2$  to hold, we must have a history  $\mathcal{H}'_j$  that extends from a distance of at least  $c_n$  from  $i$  to a distance of no more than  $(b_n + c_n)/2$  from  $i$ . That is, it must extend a distance of at least  $(c_n - b_n)/2$ . So for either  $A_1$  or  $A_2$  to hold, there must exist a history that spreads at least distance  $(c_n - b_n)/2$  away from its starting vertex. By a union bound

$$\mathbb{P}[A] \leq \mathbb{P}[A_1 \cup A_2] \quad (3.46)$$

$$\leq \mathbb{P} \left[ \bigcup_{j \in V} \{ \mathcal{H}_j \not\subseteq B(j, (c_n - b_n)/2) \times [0, t_*] \} \right] \quad (3.47)$$

$$\leq \sum_{j \in V} \mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_j \not\subseteq B(j, (c_n - b_n)/2) \times [0, t_*]] \quad (3.48)$$

$$= n \mathbb{P} \left[ \bigcup_{u \in [0, t_*]} \mathcal{H}_j(t_* - u) \not\subseteq B(j, (c_n - b_n)/2) \right]. \quad (3.49)$$

Combining this with Lemma 3.11, and recalling our choices of  $b_n = \ln(n)$  and  $c_n = \ln(n)^2$  we get that

$$\delta_1 \leq 8n^2(2\lfloor b_n \rfloor + 1) \exp((z + \ln n)/\theta - \ln 2(c_n - b_n)/2) \quad (3.50)$$

$$\leq 16 \exp(z/\theta) n^{3+1/\theta+\ln 2/2-\ln n \ln 2/2}, \quad (3.51)$$

where we have used that  $2n > 2\ln n + 1$  for all  $n \geq 1$ . It is now clear that  $\delta_1$  goes to 0 as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .  $\square$

**Lemma 3.8.** *Let  $\delta_4$  be as defined above in (2.79). Then*

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \delta_4 = 0. \quad (3.52)$$

*Proof.* Starting with the definition of  $\delta_4$ , we have

$$\delta_4 = \sum_{i=1}^n (\mathbb{E}[X_i Z_i] + \mathbb{E}[X_i] \mathbb{E}[X_i + U_i + Z_i]) \quad (3.53)$$

$$= n \mathbb{P}[X_i = 1] \mathbb{E}[Z_i | X_i = 1] + e^{-z} \sum_{j \in \{i\} \cup B_i \cup C_i} \mathbb{E}[X_j] \quad (3.54)$$

$$= e^{-z} \mathbb{E}[Z_i | X_i = 1] + \frac{(2\lfloor c_n \rfloor + 1)e^{-2z}}{n}. \quad (3.55)$$

Now

$$\mathbb{E}[Z_i | X_i = 1] = \sum_{j \in C_i} \mathbb{P}[X_j = 1 | X_i = 1] \quad (3.56)$$

$$= 2 \sum_{k=\lfloor b_n \rfloor + 1}^{\lfloor c_n \rfloor} \mathbb{P}[X_{i+k} = 1 | X_i = 1]. \quad (3.57)$$

From Lemma 3.9,

$$\mathbb{E}[Z_i | X_i = 1] \leq 2 \sum_{k=\lfloor b_n \rfloor + 1}^{\lfloor c_n \rfloor} \left( \frac{e^{-z}}{n} + 2 \left( \frac{2 - \theta - \sqrt{\theta(4 - 3\theta)}}{2 - 2\theta} \right)^k \right) \quad (3.58)$$

$$\leq \frac{2(c_n - b_n + 1)e^{-z}}{n} + 4(c_n - b_n + 1) \left( \frac{2 - \theta - \sqrt{\theta(4 - 3\theta)}}{2 - 2\theta} \right)^{b_n + 1}. \quad (3.59)$$

Altogether,

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_4 &\leq \frac{2(c_n - b_n + 1)e^{-z}}{n} + 4(c_n - b_n + 1) \left( \frac{2 - \theta - \sqrt{\theta(4 - 3\theta)}}{2 - 2\theta} \right)^{b_n + 1} \\ &\quad + \frac{(2c_n + 1)e^{-2z}}{n}, \end{aligned} \quad (3.60)$$

which, recalling that  $b_n = \ln(n)$  and  $c_n = \ln(n)^2$ , goes to 0 as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .  $\square$

## 3.4 Additional lemmas

This section contains the statements and proofs for a number of lemmas concerning properties of the update histories that are required for the proofs in Section 3.3. We start with lemmas that are specific to the cycle  $\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$  in Section 3.4.1. In Section 3.4.2, we give two lemmas which hold on much more general families of graphs than just the cycle. We use these last two lemmas not only in this chapter, but also in Chapter 4.

### 3.4.1 Lemmas that hold on the cycle

**Lemma 3.9.** *Let  $i$  and  $j$  be two vertices on the cycle  $\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$  separated by distance  $k$ . Then*

$$\mathbb{P}[X_j = 1 | X_i = 1] \leq \frac{e^{-z}}{n} + 2 \left( \frac{2 - \theta - \sqrt{\theta(4 - 3\theta)}}{2 - 2\theta} \right)^k. \quad (3.61)$$

*Proof.* There are two ways in which the update history of vertex  $j$  can survive until time 0. The update history can survive without intersecting with the update history of vertex  $i$  or the update history of vertex  $j$  can merge with the update history of vertex  $i$  (whose survival we are conditioning on). Breaking up the probability this way we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{P}[X_j = 1 | X_i = 1] &= \mathbb{P}[X_j = 1, \mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j = \emptyset | X_i = 1] \\ &\quad + \mathbb{P}[X_j = 1, \mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j \neq \emptyset | X_i = 1] \end{aligned} \quad (3.62)$$

$$\leq \mathbb{P}[X_j = 1, \mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j = \emptyset | X_i = 1] + \mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j \neq \emptyset | X_i = 1]. \quad (3.63)$$

The result follows from Lemmas 3.12 and 3.13.  $\square$

**Lemma 3.10.** *Let  $U_i^n$  and  $X_i^n$  be as defined in Section 3.2 for a vertex  $i$  on the cycle  $\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$ . For all  $k \in \mathbb{R}$ , any positive integer  $n$ , and any integer  $m > n$ ,*

$$\begin{aligned} &\mathbb{P}(U_i^n \leq k | X_i^n = 1) - \mathbb{P}(U_i^{n+m} \leq k | X_i^{n+m} = 1) \\ &\geq -2e^{z(1+1/\theta)} n^{1/\theta + \ln 2 + z} (2 \ln n + 1) \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n/2} - 2e^{-z} \ln n / n. \end{aligned} \quad (3.64)$$

*Proof.* On the length  $n$  cycle, let  $A_j$  be the event

$$A_j = \{\mathcal{H}_j^n \not\subseteq B(i, n/2 - 1) \times [0, t_*^n]\} \quad (3.65)$$

and define  $A$  to be

$$A = \bigcup_{j \in B_i^n \cup \{i\}} A_j. \quad (3.66)$$

Similarly, on the length  $n + m$  cycle, define the time  $t_0 = t_*^{n+m} - t_*^n$  and let  $\alpha_j$  be the event

$$\alpha_j = \{\mathcal{H}_j^{n+m} \cap V^{n+m} \times [t_0, t_*^{n+m}] \not\subseteq B(i, n/2 - 1) \times [t_0, t_*^{n+m}]\} \quad (3.67)$$

and define  $\alpha$  to be

$$\alpha = \bigcup_{j \in B_i^n \cup \{i\}} \alpha_j. \quad (3.68)$$

We have

$$\begin{aligned} & \mathbb{P}(U_i^n \leq k | X_i^n = 1) - \mathbb{P}(U_i^{n+m} \leq k | X_i^{n+m} = 1) \\ &= \mathbb{P}(U_i^n \leq k, A | X_i^n = 1) - \mathbb{P}(U_i^{n+m} \leq k, \alpha | X_i^{n+m} = 1) \\ & \quad + \mathbb{P}(U_i^n \leq k, A^c | X_i^n = 1) - \mathbb{P}(U_i^{n+m} \leq k, \alpha^c | X_i^{n+m} = 1) \end{aligned} \quad (3.69)$$

$$\begin{aligned} & \geq -\mathbb{P}(\alpha | X_i^{n+m} = 1) \\ & \quad + \mathbb{P}(U_i^n \leq k, A^c | X_i^n = 1) - \mathbb{P}(U_i^{n+m} \leq k, \alpha^c | X_i^{n+m} = 1). \end{aligned} \quad (3.70)$$

For a given vertex  $i$ , we may couple the histories on the length  $n$  cycle and the length  $n + m$  cycle in the following way. Recall that the update sequence on the cycle may be represented using the Poisson processes  $K_t^i$ ,  $L_t^i$ , and  $R_t^i$ , as introduced in Section 3.1.1. Let  $K_t^j$ ,  $L_t^j$ , and  $R_t^j$ ,  $j \in \{1, \dots, n + m\}$ , be the Poisson processes which represent the update sequence on the length  $n + m$  cycle. Let  $\hat{K}_t^j$  be the Poisson processes resulting from taking the updates of  $K_t^j$  in the interval  $[t_0, t_*^{n+m}]$  and temporally shifting them onto the interval  $[0, t_*^n]$ . Likewise, define  $\hat{L}_t^j$  and  $\hat{R}_t^j$  in the same way. On the size  $n$  cycle, we use the processes  $\hat{K}_t^j$ ,  $\hat{L}_t^j$ , and  $\hat{R}_t^j$  for  $j \in [i - \lceil n/2 - 1 \rceil, i + \lfloor n/2 \rfloor]$ .

The picture here is that we construct the update sequence on the length  $n$  cycle from the top part of the update sequence on the length  $n + m$  cycle. Of course, we must discard the update sequences of some vertices from the  $n + m$  cycle and we choose to discard the update sequences of those vertices that are furthest away from  $i$ .

Under this coupling, if  $\alpha^c$  holds, then we note that the histories of vertices in  $B_i \cup \{i\}$  on the length  $n$  cycle are equal to the histories along the interval  $[t_0, t_*^{n+m}]$  of the same vertices on the length  $n + m$  cycle. Hence, if  $\alpha^c$  holds, for  $j \in B_i \cup \{i\}$ ,  $X_j^n = 1$  if and only if  $\mathcal{H}_j^{n+m}(t_0) \neq \emptyset$ . We also have that  $\alpha^c$  holds if and only if  $A^c$  holds. Therefore,

$$\mathbb{P}(U_i^n \leq k, A^c | X_i^n = 1) = \mathbb{P} \left( \sum_{j \in B_i^n} I(\mathcal{H}_j^{n+m}(t_0) \neq \emptyset) \leq k, \alpha^c \middle| \mathcal{H}_i^{n+m}(t_0) \neq \emptyset \right) \quad (3.71)$$

$$= \mathbb{P} \left( \sum_{j \in B_i^n} I(\mathcal{H}_j^{n+m}(t_0) \neq \emptyset) \leq k, \alpha^c \middle| \mathcal{H}_i^{n+m}(0) \neq \emptyset \right) \quad (3.72)$$

$$= \mathbb{P} \left( \sum_{j \in B_i^n} I(\mathcal{H}_j^{n+m}(t_0) \neq \emptyset) \leq k, \alpha^c \middle| X_i^{n+m} = 1 \right). \quad (3.73)$$

where we have used Lemma 3.14 to go from (3.71) to (3.72).

Define

$$V_i = \sum_{j \in B_i^n} I[\mathcal{H}_i^{n+m} \cap \mathcal{H}_j^{n+m} \cap (V \times [t_0, t_*^{n+m}]) \neq \emptyset], \quad (3.74)$$

the number of  $j \in B_i^n$  whose histories intersect with  $\mathcal{H}_i$  in  $[t_0, t_*]$ , and

$$Y_i = \sum_{j \in B_i^n} I[\mathcal{H}_j^{n+m}(t_0) \neq \emptyset] I[\mathcal{H}_i^{n+m} \cap \mathcal{H}_j^{n+m} \cap (V \times [t_0, t_*^{n+m}]) = \emptyset], \quad (3.75)$$

the number of  $j \in B_i^n$  whose histories survive to time  $t_0$  without intersecting with  $\mathcal{H}_i$ , as well as

$$\bar{V}_i = \sum_{j \in B_i^n} I[\mathcal{H}_i^{n+m} \cap \mathcal{H}_j^{n+m} \neq \emptyset] \quad (3.76)$$

and

$$\bar{Y}_i = \sum_{j \in B_i^n} X_j^{n+m} I[\mathcal{H}_i^{n+m} \cap \mathcal{H}_j^{n+m} = \emptyset] \quad (3.77)$$

the analogous quantities defined with  $t_0$  replaced by  $t = 0$ .

Clearly, if  $X_i^{n+m} = 1$ , we have

$$\sum_{j \in B_i^n} I(\mathcal{H}_j^{n+m}(t_0) \neq \emptyset) = V_i + Y_i \quad (3.78)$$

and

$$U_i^{n+m} = \bar{V}_i + \bar{Y}_i. \quad (3.79)$$

Also note that under the coupling given above, if  $\alpha^c$  holds, then  $V_i \leq \bar{V}_i$ . Now we can bound the last two terms of (3.70). We have

$$\begin{aligned} & \mathbb{P}(U_i^n \leq k, A^c | X_i^n = 1) - \mathbb{P}(U_i^{n+m} \leq k, \alpha^c | X_i^{n+m} = 1) \\ &= \mathbb{P}(V_i + Y_i \leq k, \alpha^c | X_i^{n+m} = 1) - \mathbb{P}(\bar{V}_i + \bar{Y}_i \leq k, \alpha^c | X_i^{n+m} = 1) \end{aligned} \quad (3.80)$$

$$\begin{aligned} & \geq \mathbb{P}(V_i + Y_i \leq \bar{V}_i + \bar{Y}_i, \bar{V}_i + \bar{Y}_i \leq k, \alpha^c | X_i^{n+m} = 1) \\ & \quad - \mathbb{P}(\bar{V}_i + \bar{Y}_i \leq k, \alpha^c | X_i^{n+m} = 1) \end{aligned} \quad (3.81)$$

$$\begin{aligned} & \geq \mathbb{P}(\bar{V}_i + \bar{Y}_i \leq k, \alpha^c | X_i^{n+m} = 1) - \mathbb{P}(V_i + Y_i > \bar{V}_i + \bar{Y}_i, \alpha^c | X_i^{n+m} = 1) \\ & \quad - \mathbb{P}(\bar{V}_i + \bar{Y}_i \leq k, \alpha^c | X_i^{n+m} = 1) \end{aligned} \quad (3.82)$$

$$\geq -\mathbb{P}(V_i + Y_i > \bar{V}_i + \bar{Y}_i, \alpha^c | X_i^{n+m} = 1) \quad (3.83)$$

$$\geq -\mathbb{P}(Y_i > \bar{Y}_i | X_i^{n+m} = 1) \quad (3.84)$$

$$\geq -\mathbb{P}(Y_i \neq 0 | X_i^{n+m} = 1), \quad (3.85)$$

since conditioned on  $X_i^{n+m} = 1$ , if  $\alpha^c$  holds then  $V_i \leq \bar{V}_i$ . By Lemma 3.14, since  $Y_i$  only depends on the update sequence along  $[t_0, t_*^{n+m}]$ , we may replace the conditioning above by

$$-\mathbb{P}(Y_i \neq 0 | X_i^{n+m} = 1) = -\mathbb{P}(Y_i \neq 0 | \mathcal{H}_i^{n+m}(t_0) \neq \emptyset). \quad (3.86)$$



Now,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{P}(Y_i \neq 0 | \mathcal{H}_i^{n+m}(t_0) \neq \emptyset) &\leq \sum_{j \in B_i^n} \mathbb{P}(\mathcal{H}_j^{n+m}(t_0) \neq \emptyset, \dots \\ &\quad \dots \mathcal{H}_i^{n+m} \cap \mathcal{H}_j^{n+m} \cap (V \times [t_0, t_*^{n+m}]) = \emptyset | \mathcal{H}_i^{n+m}(t_0) \neq \emptyset) \end{aligned} \quad (3.87)$$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \mathbb{P}(\mathcal{H}_i^{n+m}(t_0) \neq \emptyset)^{-1} \sum_{j \in B_i^n} \mathbb{P}(\mathcal{H}_j^{n+m}(t_0) \neq \emptyset, \dots \\ &\quad \dots \mathcal{H}_i^{n+m} \cap \mathcal{H}_j^{n+m} \cap (V \times [t_0, t_*^{n+m}]) = \emptyset, \mathcal{H}_i^{n+m}(t_0) \neq \emptyset) \end{aligned} \quad (3.88)$$

and by Lemma 3.16 we get

$$\mathbb{P}(Y_i \neq 0 | \mathcal{H}_i^{n+m}(t_0) \neq \emptyset) \leq |B_i^n| \mathbb{P}(\mathcal{H}_i^{n+m}(t_0) \neq \emptyset). \quad (3.89)$$

We also observe that the event  $\{\mathcal{H}_i^{n+m}(t_0) \neq \emptyset\}$  is simply the event that  $\mathcal{H}_i$  does not encounter an oblivious update over an interval of length  $t_*^n$ . So

$$\mathbb{P}(Y_i \neq 0 | \mathcal{H}_i^{n+m}(t_0) \neq \emptyset) \leq |B_i^n| e^{-\theta t_*^n} \quad (3.90)$$

$$= e^{-z} |B_i^n| / n. \quad (3.91)$$

Turning to the other term of interest in (3.70) we have

$$\mathbb{P}(\alpha | X_i^{n+m} = 1) \leq \sum_{j \in B_i^n \cup \{i\}} \mathbb{P}(\alpha_j | X_i^{n+m} = 1) \quad (3.92)$$

$$= \sum_{j \in B_i^n \cup \{i\}} \mathbb{P}(\alpha_j | \mathcal{H}_i^{n+m}(t_0) \neq \emptyset) \quad (3.93)$$

$$\leq \mathbb{P}(\mathcal{H}_i^{n+m}(t_0) \neq \emptyset)^{-1} \sum_{j \in B_i^n \cup \{i\}} \mathbb{P}(\alpha_j). \quad (3.94)$$

For  $\alpha_j$  to occur,  $j \in B_i^n \cup \{i\}$ , the history of vertex  $j$  must reach a vertex at distance at least  $n/2 - b_n$  from  $j$  in time  $t_*^n$ . By Lemma 3.11 we have

$$\mathbb{P}(\alpha_j) \leq 2 \exp(t_*^n - \ln 2(n/2 - b_n)). \quad (3.95)$$

and so,

$$\mathbb{P}(\alpha | X_i^{n+m} = 1) \leq n e^z (|B_i^n| + 1) 2 \exp(t_*^n - \ln 2(n/2 - b_n)). \quad (3.96)$$

So overall we have

$$\begin{aligned} &\mathbb{P}(U_i^n \leq k | X_i^n = 1) - \mathbb{P}(U_i^{n+m} \leq k | X_i^{n+m} = 1) \\ &\geq -n e^z (|B_i^n| + 1) 2 \exp(t_*^n - \ln 2(n/2 - b_n)) - e^{-z} |B_i^n| / n, \end{aligned} \quad (3.97)$$

which, recalling our choices of  $b_n = \ln n$  and  $t_*^n = (z + \ln n)/\theta$ , becomes

$$\begin{aligned} & \mathbb{P}(U_i^n \leq k | X_i^n = 1) - \mathbb{P}(U_i^{n+m} \leq k | X_i^{n+m} = 1) \\ & \geq -2e^{z(1+1/\theta)} n^{1/\theta + \ln 2 + z} (2 \ln n + 1) \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n/2} - 2e^{-z} \ln n / n. \end{aligned} \quad (3.98)$$

□

The following Lemma bounds how fast updates can percolate through the cycle. The proof is a slight modification of a similar result in [48, Lemma 2.1].

**Lemma 3.11.** *Let  $i$  be a vertex on the cycle  $\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$ . The probability that the update history of vertex  $i$  escapes  $B(i, l)$  in time  $s$  satisfies*

$$\mathbb{P} \left[ \bigcup_{u \in [0, s]} \mathcal{H}_i(t_* - u) \not\subseteq B(i, l) \right] \leq 2 \exp(s - l \ln 2). \quad (3.99)$$

*Proof.* Let  $\mathbf{w}^- = (i, i-1, \dots, i-l)$  and  $\mathbf{w}^+ = (i, i+1, \dots, i+l)$  denote the sequences of adjacent vertices starting at vertex  $i$  and extending distance  $l$  to the left and right respectively. For  $\mathcal{H}_i$  to contain any vertex outside  $B(i, l)$  at a time  $u \in [t_* - s, t_*]$  then either each  $w_k^-$  was updated at some time  $t_* > t_k \geq t_* - s$  with  $t_{k-1} > t_k$  or each  $w_k^+$  was updated at some time  $t_* > t_k \geq t_* - s$  with  $t_{k-1} > t_k$ . Call the first event  $M_-$  and the second  $M_+$ . For  $M_-$  to occur, first  $i$  must update, then  $i-1$  must update, and so on. Each vertex updates at rate 1, and there are  $l$  updates required within time  $s$ . So the probability of this event is the probability that a rate 1 Poisson clock goes off at least  $l$  times in time  $s$ , or equivalently

$$\mathbb{P}[M_-] = \mathbb{P}[M_+] = \mathbb{P}[Y \geq l], \quad (3.100)$$

where  $Y \sim \text{Po}(s)$  is Poisson with rate  $s$ . By a union bound,

$$\mathbb{P} \left[ \bigcup_{u \in [0, s]} \mathcal{H}_i(t_* - u) \not\subseteq B(i, l) \right] \leq 2\mathbb{P}[\text{Po}(s) \geq l]. \quad (3.101)$$

The moment generating function of a Poisson random variable with rate  $s$  is

$$M(t) = \exp(s(e^t - 1)). \quad (3.102)$$

Using a Chernoff bound we have for every  $t > 0$ ,

$$\mathbb{P}[\text{Po}(s) \geq l] \leq \exp(s(e^t - 1) - tl). \quad (3.103)$$

Overall we have

$$\mathbb{P} \left[ \bigcup_{u \in [0, s]} \mathcal{H}_i(t_* - u) \not\subseteq B(i, l) \right] \leq 2 \exp(s(e^t - 1) - tl). \quad (3.104)$$

Choosing  $t = \ln 2$  then yields

$$\mathbb{P} \left[ \bigcup_{u \in [0, s]} \mathcal{H}_i(t_* - u) \not\subseteq B(i, l) \right] \leq 2 \exp(s - l \ln 2). \quad (3.105)$$

□

**Lemma 3.12.** *Let  $i$  and  $j$  be two vertices on the cycle  $\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$ . Then*

$$\mathbb{P}[X_j = 1, \mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j = \emptyset | X_i = 1] \leq e^{-z}/n. \quad (3.106)$$

*Proof.* To begin

$$\mathbb{P}[X_j = 1, \mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j = \emptyset | X_i = 1] = \mathbb{P}[X_i = 1]^{-1} \mathbb{P}[X_i = 1, X_j = 1, \mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j = \emptyset] \quad (3.107)$$

$$= \frac{\mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_i(0) \neq \emptyset, \mathcal{H}_j(0) \neq \emptyset, \mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j = \emptyset]}{\mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_i(0) \neq \emptyset]}. \quad (3.108)$$

By Lemma 3.16,

$$\mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_i(0) \neq \emptyset, \mathcal{H}_j(0) \neq \emptyset, \mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j = \emptyset] \leq \mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_i(0) \neq \emptyset]^2. \quad (3.109)$$

Since  $\mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_j(0) \neq \emptyset] = e^{-z}/n$  we get the desired result. □

**Lemma 3.13.** *Let  $i$  and  $j$  be two vertices on the cycle  $\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$  that are separated by distance  $k$ . Then*

$$\mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j \neq \emptyset | X_j = 1] \leq 2 \left( \frac{2 - \theta - \sqrt{\theta(4 - 3\theta)}}{2 - 2\theta} \right)^k. \quad (3.110)$$

*Proof.* We must first deal with the effect that conditioning on  $X_j = 1$  has on the probability that the two update histories merge. Recall from 3.1.1 that we could interpret the update sequence as a collection of independent Poisson processes for each vertex. We may construct a different collection of filtered Poisson processes for each vertex by following the updates that occur along a single vertex's history. Let  $\bar{\mathcal{H}}_i$  be the update history that results from ignoring all oblivious updates (that is, the history does not die when it encounters an oblivious update). Then define  $L_t^{\mathcal{H}_i}$  to be the Poisson process that places a point every time  $\bar{\mathcal{H}}_i$  encounters a left update,  $R_t^{\mathcal{H}_i}$  the Poisson process that places a point every time  $\bar{\mathcal{H}}_i$  encounters a right update, and  $K_t^{\mathcal{H}_i}$  the Poisson process

that places a point every time  $\bar{\mathcal{H}}_i$  encounters an oblivious update. It is easy to see that these are Poisson processes with waiting times that are exponential with rate  $(1 - \theta)/2$  for  $L_t^{\mathcal{H}_i}$  and  $R_t^{\mathcal{H}_i}$ , and rate  $\theta$  for  $K_t^{\mathcal{H}_i}$ ; and that  $L_t^{\mathcal{H}_i}$ ,  $R_t^{\mathcal{H}_i}$ , and  $K_t^{\mathcal{H}_i}$  are all independent of each other. Furthermore, for two vertices  $i$  and  $j$ , while  $\mathcal{H}_i$  and  $\mathcal{H}_j$  do not share any updates,  $L_t^{\mathcal{H}_i}$ ,  $R_t^{\mathcal{H}_i}$ , and  $K_t^{\mathcal{H}_i}$  are all independent of each of  $L_t^{\mathcal{H}_j}$ ,  $R_t^{\mathcal{H}_j}$ , and  $K_t^{\mathcal{H}_j}$ .

We now see that conditioning on  $X_j = 1$  is equivalent to conditioning that  $K_t^{\mathcal{H}_j}$  has no updates along  $[0, t_*]$ . Since  $L_t^{\mathcal{H}_j}$  and  $R_t^{\mathcal{H}_j}$  are independent of  $K_t^{\mathcal{H}_j}$ , conditioning on  $X_j = 1$  does not affect the left and right updates and so we have that

$$\mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j \neq \emptyset | X_j = 1] = \mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_i \cap \bar{\mathcal{H}}_j \neq \emptyset]. \quad (3.111)$$

Consider a process which measure the distance between the two modified histories  $\bar{\mathcal{H}}_i$  and  $\bar{\mathcal{H}}_j$ ,

$$P(t) = d(\bar{\mathcal{H}}_i(t_* - t), \bar{\mathcal{H}}_j(t_* - t)), \quad 0 \leq t \leq t_*. \quad (3.112)$$

Define the time  $S_0$  via  $S_0 = \inf\{t : P(t) = 0\}$  or  $S_0 = \infty$  if  $P(t) > 0$  for all  $t \in [0, t_*]$ . Define the time  $S_d$  via  $S_d = \inf\{t : \mathcal{H}_i(t_* - t) = \emptyset\}$  or  $S_d = t_*$  if  $\mathcal{H}_i(t) \neq \emptyset$  for all  $t \in [0, t_*]$ . Then

$$\mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_i \cap \bar{\mathcal{H}}_j \neq \emptyset] = \mathbb{P}[S_0 \leq S_d]. \quad (3.113)$$

For most configurations of  $\bar{\mathcal{H}}_i(t)$  and  $\bar{\mathcal{H}}_j(t)$ , while  $P(t) > 0$ ,  $P(t)$  reduces by 1 at rate  $1 - \theta$  and increases by 1 at rate  $1 - \theta$ . The only exception being when  $\bar{\mathcal{H}}_i(t_* - t)$  and  $\bar{\mathcal{H}}_j(t_* - t)$  are maximally separated on the cycle, in which case the distance between them cannot increase.

To account for this, we construct two related birth and death processes. We assume that  $i$  is to the left of  $j$  (if it is to the right, we may simply swap ‘left’ and ‘right’ in what follows). The first,  $P_1(t)$ , starts at  $k = d(i, j)$  and increases by one every time  $\bar{\mathcal{H}}_i$  moves left or  $\bar{\mathcal{H}}_j$  moves right and decreases by one every time  $\bar{\mathcal{H}}_i$  moves right or  $\bar{\mathcal{H}}_j$  moves left. The second,  $P_2(t)$ , starts at  $n - k$  and decreases by one every time  $P_1(t)$  increases by one, and increases by one every time  $P_1(t)$  decreases by one. We may also construct times  $S_0^{P_1}$  and  $S_0^{P_2}$  as above to be the first times that  $P_1$  reaches 0 and  $P_2$  reaches 0 respectively (or  $\infty$  if they do not reach 0). The events  $\{P(t) = 0\}$  and  $\{P_1(t) = 0\} \cup \{P_2(t) = 0\}$  coincide and so

$$\mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_i \cap \bar{\mathcal{H}}_j \neq \emptyset] = \mathbb{P}[\min(S_0^{P_1}, S_0^{P_2}) \leq S_d] \quad (3.114)$$

$$\leq \mathbb{P}[S_0^{P_1} \leq S_d] + \mathbb{P}[S_0^{P_2} \leq S_d] \quad (3.115)$$

$$\leq 2\mathbb{P}[S_0^{P_1} \leq S_d] \quad (3.116)$$

since  $P_1(t)$  starts closer to 0 than  $P_2(t)$  does. Let  $S_\theta$  be exponentially distributed with rate  $\theta$ , and independent of  $S_0^{P_1}$ . We have that  $S_d \stackrel{d}{=} \min(S_\theta, t_*)$ , and since both  $S_\theta$  and  $S_d$  are independent of  $S_0^{P_1}$ , we have

$$\mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_i \cap \bar{\mathcal{H}}_j \neq \emptyset] \leq 2\mathbb{P}[S_0^{P_1} \leq \min(S_\theta, t_*)] \quad (3.117)$$

$$\leq 2\mathbb{P}[S_0^{P_1} \leq S_\theta]. \quad (3.118)$$

In the case that  $P_1(t) > 0$  for all  $t \in [0, t_*]$ , instead of defining  $S_0^{P_1}$  to be infinite, we may instead choose to extend  $P_1(t)$  into the interval  $(t_*, \infty)$  by continuing the birth and death transitions with rates  $\lambda = \mu = 1 - \theta$ , independent of  $S_\theta$ . Call this extended process  $P'_1(t)$ . We can then define  $S_0^{P'_1} = \inf\{t : P'_1(t) = 0\}$  which we note has been constructed such that  $S_0^{P'_1} \leq S_0^{P_1}$ . We therefore have

$$\mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_i \cap \bar{\mathcal{H}}_j \neq \emptyset] \leq 2\mathbb{P}[S_0^{P'_1} \leq S_\theta]. \quad (3.119)$$

While  $t < S_\theta$  and  $P'_1(t) > 0$ , there are three possibilities for what can happen to  $P'_1$  next. Either the next event is a birth with probability  $(1 - \theta)/(2 - \theta)$ , the next event is a death with the same probability or we reach time  $S_\theta$  with probability  $\theta/(2 - \theta)$ . Writing  $\zeta_k = \mathbb{P}_k(S_0^{P'_1} < S_\theta)$ , where  $\mathbb{P}_k$  denotes that  $P_1(t)$  starts at  $k$ , this gives us the recurrence relation

$$\zeta_k = \frac{1 - \theta}{2 - \theta} \zeta_{k-1} + \frac{1 - \theta}{2 - \theta} \zeta_{k+1}, \quad (3.120)$$

which is subject to the conditions

$$\zeta_0 = 1 \quad (3.121)$$

$$\zeta_k \leq 1, \forall k \in \mathbb{N}. \quad (3.122)$$

This recurrence has characteristic equation

$$x^2 - \frac{2 - \theta}{1 - \theta}x + 1 = 0, \quad (3.123)$$

which has roots

$$r_1 = \frac{2 - \theta + \sqrt{\theta(4 - 3\theta)}}{2 - 2\theta}, \quad (3.124)$$

$$r_2 = \frac{2 - \theta - \sqrt{\theta(4 - 3\theta)}}{2 - 2\theta}, \quad (3.125)$$

and so

$$\zeta_k = ar_1^k + br_2^k, \quad (3.126)$$

where  $a$  and  $b$  are constants to be determined from (3.121) and (3.122). We note that  $r_1 \geq 1, \forall \theta \in [0, 1]$  and so from (3.122) we have that  $a = 0$ . Finally from (3.121),  $b = 1$  and so

$$\zeta_k = \left( \frac{2 - \theta - \sqrt{\theta(4 - 3\theta)}}{2 - 2\theta} \right)^k. \quad (3.127)$$

Overall,

$$\mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j \neq \emptyset | X_j = 1] \leq 2 \left( \frac{2 - \theta - \sqrt{\theta(4 - 3\theta)}}{2 - 2\theta} \right)^k. \quad (3.128)$$

□

**Lemma 3.14.** *Consider the update histories on the cycle  $\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$ . Let  $E$  be an event that depends only on the update sequence along  $[t_1, t_*]$ . Then for any vertex,  $i$ , and any  $t_0 \leq t_1$ ,*

$$\mathbb{P}(E | \mathcal{H}_i(t_1) \neq \emptyset) = \mathbb{P}(E | \mathcal{H}_i(t_0) \neq \emptyset). \quad (3.129)$$

*Proof.* Let  $\bar{\mathcal{H}}_i$  be the update history that results from ignoring all oblivious updates (that is, the history does not die when it encounters an oblivious update). Let  $K_t^{\bar{\mathcal{H}}_i}$  be the point process that places a point every time  $\bar{\mathcal{H}}_i$  encounters an oblivious update. It is obvious that this is a Poisson process with waiting times that are exponential with rate  $\theta$ . We have that the event  $\{\mathcal{H}_i(t_1) \neq \emptyset\}$  coincides with the event  $\{K_t^{\bar{\mathcal{H}}_i} \text{ encounters no oblivious updates along } [t_1, t_*]\}$ . Since the waiting times of  $K_t^{\bar{\mathcal{H}}_i}$  are exponential, conditioning on the behaviour of  $K_t^{\bar{\mathcal{H}}_i}$  along  $[t_0, t_1)$  does not affect the behaviour of  $K_t^{\bar{\mathcal{H}}_i}$  along  $[t_1, t_*]$ . Since  $E$  only depends only on the update sequence along  $[t_1, t_*]$ , conditioning on the behaviour of  $K_t^{\bar{\mathcal{H}}_i}$  along  $[t_0, t_1)$  does not affect its probability. Hence

$$\mathbb{P}(E | \mathcal{H}_i(t_1) \neq \emptyset) = \mathbb{P}\left(E | K_t^{\bar{\mathcal{H}}_i} \text{ encounters no oblivious updates along } [t_1, t_*]\right) \quad (3.130)$$

$$= \mathbb{P}\left(E | K_t^{\bar{\mathcal{H}}_i} \text{ encounters no oblivious updates along } [t_0, t_*]\right) \quad (3.131)$$

$$= \mathbb{P}(E | \mathcal{H}_i(t_0) \neq \emptyset). \quad (3.132)$$

□

### 3.4.2 Lemmas that hold on a more general family of graphs

**Lemma 3.15.** *Let  $i$  be a vertex in a connected graph and define the events*

$$A_1 = \{\exists j \in B_i \cup \{i\}, \exists t \in [0, t_*] : \mathcal{H}_j(t) \not\subseteq B(i, (b_n + c_n)/2)\} \quad (3.133)$$

and

$$A_2 = \{\exists j \in D_i, \exists t \in [0, t_*] : \mathcal{H}_j(t) \cap B(i, (b_n + c_n)/2) \neq \emptyset\} \quad (3.134)$$

as well as their union

$$A = A_1 \cup A_2. \quad (3.135)$$

Then

$$\mathbb{P}[X_i = 1, U_i = j | A^c, W_i] = \mathbb{P}[X_i = 1, U_i = j | A^c]. \quad (3.136)$$

*Proof.* If  $A_1^c$  holds, then the events  $\{X_i = 1\}$  and  $\{U_i = j\}$  depend only on the values of the update sequence inside  $B(i, (b_n + c_n)/2)$ . If  $A_2^c$  holds then the events  $\{W_i = k\}$ ,  $k \geq 0$ , depend only on the values of the update sequence outside of  $B(i, (b_n + c_n)/2)$ . Since the update sequences of each vertex are independent of each other vertex, if  $A_2^c$  holds, conditioning on  $W_i$  does not affect the update sequences inside  $B(i, (b_n + c_n)/2)$  and so

$$\mathbb{P}[X_i = 1, U_i = j | A^c, W_i] = \mathbb{P}[X_i = 1, U_i = j | A^c]. \quad (3.137)$$

□

**Lemma 3.16.** *Let  $i$  and  $j$  be two vertices in a transitive graph,  $G = (V, E)$ . Let  $0 \leq t_0 < t_*$ . Then*

$$\mathbb{P}(\mathcal{H}_j(t_0) \neq \emptyset, \mathcal{H}_i(t_0) \neq \emptyset, \mathcal{H}_j \cap \mathcal{H}_i \cap (V \times [t_0, t_*]) \neq \emptyset) \leq \mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_i(t_0) \neq \emptyset]^2. \quad (3.138)$$

*Proof.* Define  $S$  to be the time closest to  $t_*$  that the histories of  $i$  and  $j$  intersect, or define  $S = t_0$  if the histories do not intersect along  $[t_0, t_*]$ . We construct a new history,  $\mathcal{H}'_j$ , in the following way. For all  $t \in [S, t_*]$ ,  $\mathcal{H}'_j(t) = \mathcal{H}_j(t)$ . However, along the interval  $[t_0, S)$ , we replace the update sequence with an another i.i.d. copy of the update sequence along the interval  $[t_0, S)$  and construct the remainder of  $\mathcal{H}'_j$  using this new update sequence.

Clearly,  $\mathcal{H}'_j$  and  $\mathcal{H}_j$  have the same distribution. Moreover, we now argue that  $\mathcal{H}'_j$  is independent of  $\mathcal{H}_i$ . By construction,  $\cup_{t=0}^S \mathcal{H}'_j(t)$  is independent of  $\cup_{t=0}^S \mathcal{H}_k(t)$  for all  $k \in V$ , and in particular, for  $k = i$ . For  $t \geq S$  we note that no updates are a part of both histories. Since every update comes from independent Poisson processes, the updates in  $\mathcal{H}'_j \cap (V \times [S, t_*])$  are independent of those in  $\mathcal{H}_i \cap (V \times [S, t_*])$ . Hence  $\mathcal{H}'_j$  and  $\mathcal{H}_i$  are independent.

Note that in the event  $\{\mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j \cap (V \times [t_0, t_*]) = \emptyset\}$ , we have  $\mathcal{H}_j = \mathcal{H}'_j$  along the interval  $[t_0, t_*]$  and so

$$\begin{aligned} & \mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_i(t_0) \neq \emptyset, \mathcal{H}_j(t_0) \neq \emptyset, \mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j \cap (V \times [t_0, t_*]) = \emptyset] \\ &= \mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_i(t_0) \neq \emptyset, \mathcal{H}'_j(t_0) \neq \emptyset, \mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j \cap (V \times [t_0, t_*]) = \emptyset] \end{aligned} \quad (3.139)$$

$$\leq \mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_i(t_0) \neq \emptyset, \mathcal{H}'_j(t_0) \neq \emptyset] \quad (3.140)$$

$$= \mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_i(t_0) \neq \emptyset] \mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}'_j(t_0) \neq \emptyset] \quad (3.141)$$

$$= \mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_i(t_0) \neq \emptyset]^2, \quad (3.142)$$

since  $\mathcal{H}_i$  and  $\mathcal{H}'_j$  are independent and  $\mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_i(t_0) \neq \emptyset] = \mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}'_j(t_0) \neq \emptyset]$  by the transitivity of  $G$ .  $\square$



## Chapter 4

# The Coupling Time on Vertex Transitive Graphs

For the most part, this chapter will be similar in structure and content to Chapter 3. The main difference is that we extend the family of graphs on which we consider the Ising heat-bath Glauber dynamics from the cycle to a certain family of vertex transitive graphs. Again, the main result, Theorem 4.2, concerns the coupling time,  $T_n$ , as defined in Section 2.2.2, and establishes that at sufficiently high temperature (that is, for  $\beta$  small enough), the coupling time converges in distribution to a Gumbel distribution.

Restricting  $\beta$  to be sufficiently small is a consequence of the increased generality of this chapter. As mentioned in Chapter 3, in the high-temperature regime we expect the dynamics to be similar to those when  $\beta = 0$ . When  $\beta = 0$  the problem simplifies to the coupon collector's problem, which is known to have a Gumbel limit. However, at the critical temperature, and below in the low-temperature regime, there is no reason to suspect that the dynamics will behave similarly to when  $\beta = 0$ . So our restriction of  $\beta$  to be small enough for the result to hold is, on at least a descriptive level, somewhat expected.

Our result partially confirms the conjecture by Collevocchio et al. in [12] that the coupling time for the Ising heat-bath process on the  $d$ -dimensional lattice,  $G_L = (\mathbb{Z}/L\mathbb{Z})^d$ , converges to a Gumbel distribution as  $L \rightarrow \infty$  for all  $\beta < \beta_C$ . Our result does not hold all the way up to the critical temperature. This is due to the fact that we are considering a larger class of graphs than just the square lattice, and so it is unreasonable to expect such a result to provide sharp bounds for the lattice. A separate treatment of the square lattice in particular may be needed for a result holding all the way up to the critical temperature. Note that this is what Lubetzky and Sly did in [46] to prove the existence of cutoff for the full high-temperature regime. Since our proof is also based on

information percolation there is good reason to think that a similar approach could also work to extend our result.

The main part of our proof which requires  $\beta$  to be sufficiently small is in Lemma 4.14. In particular, this Lemma concerns a quantity which is closely related to a quantity used in [47] to prove the existence of cutoff (see the comments immediately preceding Lemma 4.14). This similarity further encourages future efforts to sharpen our result.

To state the main result we must first define the graphs on which it is valid. Let  $(G_n)$  be a sequence of vertex-transitive graphs with fixed degree  $\Delta$  and where  $n$  counts the number of vertices in  $G_n$ . Let  $P_n(k)$  denote the number of vertices at distance  $k$  from a vertex  $i$  in  $G_n$  and let  $Q_n(k)$  denote the number of vertices at distance  $k$  or less from a vertex  $i$  in  $G_n$ . Define

$$\mathcal{G} = \left\{ (G_n) : \exists C_2 > 0 \text{ such that } \limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} P_n(k) e^{-k} \leq C_2, Q_n(\ln^2(n)) = o(n) \right\}. \quad (4.1)$$

In this chapter we consider sequences of vertex-transitive graphs  $(G_n) \in \mathcal{G}$ .

It is worth verifying that the set  $\mathcal{G}$  contains some graph sequences that are of interest. We start by showing that it contains the  $d$ -dimensional discrete tori.

**Lemma 4.1.** *Define the sequence of length  $L$   $d$ -dimensional square lattices on a torus,  $(G_L)_{L \geq 1}$ , via  $G_L = (\mathbb{Z}/L\mathbb{Z})^d$ . Then  $(G_L)_{L \geq 1} \in \mathcal{G}$ .*

*Proof.* The torus  $G_L = (\mathbb{Z}/L\mathbb{Z})^d$  is obviously vertex transitive and the sequence  $(G_L)_{L \geq 1}$  has fixed degree  $\Delta = 2d$ . By definition  $P_n(k) \leq Q_n(k)$  and we can upper bound  $Q_n(k)$  by the number of vertices contained within distance  $k$  of the origin on the infinite  $d$ -dimensional integer lattice,  $Q_\infty(k)$ .

To bound  $Q_\infty(k)$ , consider first the number of vertices contained within distance  $k$  of the origin in the closed positive orthant,  $Q_\infty(k)^+$ . That is, the number of vertices  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_d)$  with  $x_i \geq 0$  and such that

$$\sum_{i=1}^d x_i \leq k \quad (4.2)$$

We note that we can represent each vertex in the positive orthant within distance  $k$  of the origin by  $k$  stars separated by  $d$  bars, and taking  $x_i$  to be the number of stars between bars  $i - 1$  and  $i$ . So for example, if  $k = 5$  and  $d = 3$ , the arrangement

$$\star \mid \star \star \mid \mid \star \star \quad (4.3)$$

represents the vertex  $\mathbf{x} = (1, 2, 0)$ . Note that any stars after the last bar are not included (this accounts for  $\mathbf{x}$  being closer than distance  $k$  to the origin). There are  $k + d$  choose  $d$  ways to arrange the stars and bars and so

$$Q_\infty(k)^+ \leq \binom{k+d}{d} \quad (4.4)$$

and since in  $d$  dimensions there are  $2^d$  orthants,

$$P_n(k) \leq Q_n(k) \leq Q_\infty(k) \leq \frac{2^d}{d!} (k+1)(k+2) \dots (k+d). \quad (4.5)$$

This is a degree  $d$  polynomial in  $k$  which satisfies the constraints in (4.1).  $\square$

Another class of graphs contained in  $\mathcal{G}$  are the  $m$ th powers of  $G_L = (\mathbb{Z}/L\mathbb{Z})^d$ . The  $m$ th power of a graph  $G$  is a graph,  $G^m$ , with the same vertices as  $G$ , but in which we make adjacent all vertices whose distance in  $G$  is no more than  $m$ . Clearly,  $Q_n^{G^m}(k) \leq Q_n^G(mk)$ , and  $G^m$  inherits the transitivity of  $G$ . Hence sequences of powers of  $G_L = (\mathbb{Z}/L\mathbb{Z})^d$  are also in  $\mathcal{G}$ . This is of practical interest since the Ising model on  $G^m$  corresponds to the Ising model with  $m$  nearest neighbours on  $G$  (see for example [21] on the Ising model with next nearest neighbours).

We now define a couple of quantities. Firstly, the *expected magnetization at vertex  $i$  at time  $t$*  is

$$m_t(i) = \mathbb{E}[\mathcal{T}_t[i]] \quad (4.6)$$

where  $(\mathcal{T}_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is the dynamics starting from the all-plus configuration. Note that on transitive graphs, with which this chapter is concerned, we can drop the dependence on  $i$  and simply write  $m_t$  for the expected magnetization at any vertex at time  $t$ .

This quantity is not to be confused with the total magnetization of a stationary Ising configuration, as defined in Section 2.1.1. Recall from (2.5) that given a fixed configuration, the total magnetization on a volume  $\Lambda$  is the sum of the spins on  $\Lambda$ . We could consider an analogous random variable,  $M_t$ , that is the sum of the spins of the top process,  $\mathcal{T}_t$ , at any fixed time  $t$ . Then we have

$$\frac{\mathbb{E}[M_t]}{n} = m_t. \quad (4.7)$$

As we do not need to refer to the total magnetization of a stationary Ising configuration in this chapter, we will refer to the expected magnetization as simply the magnetization.

We can now define the time

$$t_c(n) = \inf \left\{ t > 0 : m_t = \frac{1}{n} \right\}. \quad (4.8)$$

which is around the time it takes for the top and bottom chains to couple. Note that this is well defined since by definition  $m_0 = 1$  and by Lemma 4.3,  $m_t$  is continuous and asymptotically decays to zero, and hence must take value  $1/n$  at some time.

One way of interpreting this time is that at time  $t_c(n)$ ,  $\mathbb{E}[M_{t_c(n)}] = 1$ . By way of comparison, at the initial state,  $\mathbb{E}[M_0] = n$ , and at stationarity,  $\mathbb{E}[M] = 0$ .

**Theorem 4.2.** *Let  $(G_n) \in \mathcal{G}$  be a sequence of vertex-transitive graphs,  $G_n = (V, E)$  with  $n = |V|$  vertices. Let  $T_n$  be the coupling time for the continuous-time Ising heat-bath dynamics for the zero-field ferromagnetic Ising model on  $G_n$ . Then for any small enough inverse-temperature  $\beta$ , there exists a subsequence  $(T_m)$  of  $(T_n)$  such that*

$$\lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} \mathbb{P}[T_m < z + t_c(m)] = e^{-C_1 e^{-C_2 z}} \quad (4.9)$$

for some

$$C_1 = C_1(\beta, \mathcal{G}) \in (0, 1] \quad (4.10)$$

and

$$C_2 = C_2(\beta, \mathcal{G}) \in [1 - \beta\Delta, 1]. \quad (4.11)$$

The proof of Theorem 4.2 will be given in Section 4.3 after the essential preliminaries are presented. In Section 4.1 we describe an alternative construction of the histories that can sometimes be easier to work with, and state some results concerning the magnetization. Then in Section 4.2, we outline the overall approach to the proof. The method is similar to the method used in Chapter 3. Finally, we defer results directly concerning the update histories to Section 4.4.

## 4.1 Information percolation in higher dimensions

In the previous chapter, we showed that on the cycle, there was a coupling that made the update history of a single vertex to be a continuous-time random walk that died at rate  $\theta$ . On lattices of dimension  $d > 2$ , we can no longer use this coupling and so the updates histories are significantly more complex.

Recall from Section 2.3.2.2 that given a target time  $t_*$ , the update support of a vertex set  $A$  at time  $t$ ,  $\mathcal{H}_A(t)$ , is the set of vertices whose spins at time  $t$  determine the spins of  $A$  at time  $t_*$ . This support can be constructed using the update sequence along  $(t, t_*]$ .

Developing the update support backwards in time from  $t = t_*$  produces a subgraph of  $V \times [0, t_*]$  which we write as  $\mathcal{H}_A$  and call the update history of  $A$ .

It is not immediately obvious what these histories look like. To gain some intuition, and to simplify some later proofs, we will construct a different subgraph,  $\hat{\mathcal{H}}_A$  which contains  $\mathcal{H}_A$ . In doing so we also define an analogous update support  $\hat{\mathcal{H}}_A(t)$  for every  $t \in [0, t_*]$ .

Construct  $\hat{\mathcal{H}}_A$  as follows: For each  $i \in A$ , create a temporal edge between  $(i, t_*)$  and  $(i, t_i)$  where  $t_i$  is the time of the latest update to  $i$  (or 0 if  $i$  is never updated). Then for each update  $(i, U, t_i)$ , we either terminate the edge if  $U$  is such that the update is oblivious, or we add spatial branches to each of the neighbours of  $i$ . We repeat this process recursively for the neighbours of  $i$  until every branch has been terminated due to an oblivious update or has reached time 0. Since oblivious updates do not depend on any other vertices, and since a non-oblivious update to  $i$  depends on at most the neighbours of  $i$ , we have that  $\mathcal{H}_A(t) \subseteq \hat{\mathcal{H}}_A(t)$ , and that  $\mathcal{H}_A$  is a subgraph of  $\hat{\mathcal{H}}_A$ .

Note that it is possible for vertices to be removed from  $\mathcal{H}_A(t)$  by updates that are not oblivious (see Figure 2.4 for an example on the cycle). Since our method for constructing  $\hat{\mathcal{H}}_A$  does not take this into account, in general we expect that  $\mathcal{H}_A$  and  $\hat{\mathcal{H}}_A$  are not equal.

#### 4.1.1 The magnetization

One quantity which we used multiple times in Chapter 3 was  $\mathbb{P}[X_i = 1] = \mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_i(0) \neq \emptyset]$ . Although it was not required earlier, we would now like to make clear that this is in fact the magnetization at time  $t_*$ .

Recall that the magnetization at vertex  $i \in V$  at time  $t \geq 0$  is defined to be

$$m_t(i) = \mathbb{E}[\mathcal{T}_t[i]], \quad (4.12)$$

where  $(\mathcal{T}_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is the dynamics starting from the all-plus configuration. Given a monotonically coupled chain  $(\mathcal{B}_t)_{t \geq 0}$ , starting in the all minus configuration and such that  $\mathcal{T}_t[i] \geq \mathcal{B}_t[i]$  for all  $t \geq 0$  and  $i \in V$ , we can split up this expectation by conditioning on the event  $A_t = \{\mathcal{T}_t[i] \neq \mathcal{B}_t[i]\}$ . We obtain that

$$m_t(i) = \mathbb{E}[\mathcal{T}_t[i]] \quad (4.13)$$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \mathbb{P}[A_t] (\mathbb{P}[\mathcal{T}_t[i] = 1 | A_t] - \mathbb{P}[\mathcal{T}_t[i] = -1 | A_t]) \\ &\quad + \mathbb{P}[A_t^c] (\mathbb{P}[\mathcal{T}_t[i] = 1 | A_t^c] - \mathbb{P}[\mathcal{T}_t[i] = -1 | A_t^c]). \end{aligned} \quad (4.14)$$

Now if event  $A_t^c$  holds,  $\mathcal{T}_t[i] = \mathcal{B}_t[i]$ , and so by symmetry vertex  $i$  must take values  $-1$  and  $+1$  uniformly. Furthermore, by the monotonicity of our coupling, if  $A_t$  holds, we must have that  $\mathcal{T}_t[i] = +1$  and  $\mathcal{B}_t[i] = -1$ . So

$$m_t(i) = \mathbb{P}[A_t]. \quad (4.15)$$

Finally, given a target time  $t_*$ ,  $X_i$  is defined such that  $\{X_i = 1\} = A_{t_*}$ . So

$$\mathbb{P}[X_i = 1] = m_{t_*}(i). \quad (4.16)$$

We end this section with some results concerning the magnetization, and in particular, the magnetization at time

$$t_* = t_c(n) + z. \quad (4.17)$$

The following comes from [49] and is valid on any graph, not just transitive ones.

**Lemma 4.3** ([49], Claim 3.3). *On any graph with maximum degree  $\Delta$ , for any  $t, s > 0$  we have*

$$e^{-2s} \leq \frac{\sum_i m_{t+s}[i]^2}{\sum_i m_t[i]^2} \leq e^{-2(1-\beta\Delta)s}. \quad (4.18)$$

The following corollaries are then straightforward.

**Corollary 4.4.** *On any vertex transitive graph with degree  $\Delta$ , for any  $t, s > 0$  we have*

$$e^{-s} m_t \leq m_{t+s} \leq m_t e^{-(1-\beta\Delta)s}. \quad (4.19)$$

**Corollary 4.5.** *On any vertex transitive graph with degree  $\Delta$ ,  $m_{t_*}$  can be bounded as follows:*

For  $z \geq 0$ ,

$$\frac{e^{-z}}{n} \leq m_{t_*} \leq \frac{e^{-(1-\beta\Delta)z}}{n}. \quad (4.20)$$

For  $z \leq 0$ ,

$$\frac{e^{-(1-\beta\Delta)z}}{n} \leq m_{t_*} \leq \frac{e^{-z}}{n}. \quad (4.21)$$

Bearing in mind that  $m_0 = 1$ , we also obtain a bound on  $t_c(n)$ .

**Corollary 4.6.** *On any vertex transitive graph with degree  $\Delta$ , for  $\beta < 1/\Delta$*

$$\ln(n) \leq t_c(n) \leq \frac{\ln(n)}{1 - \beta\Delta}. \quad (4.22)$$

## 4.2 Problem set-up

As in Chapter 3, to prove Theorem 4.2 we will use the method sketched out in Section 2.4. The various quantities left unspecified there are defined almost identically to Chapter 3; the main difference in construction being that here we are interested in graph sequences  $(G_n) \in \mathcal{G}$  and we define  $t_*$  as in (4.17).

Recalling the definition of  $t_c(n)$  in (4.8), fix  $z \in \mathbb{R}$  and set

$$t_* = t_c(n) + z. \quad (4.23)$$

By Corollary 4.6, for any fixed  $z \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $t_* > 0$  for all sufficiently large  $n$  and we only consider such  $n$  in what follows. As in Chapter 3, we define the vertex sets

$$B_i = \{j \neq i : d(i, j) \leq b_n\}, \quad (4.24)$$

$$C_i = \{j \notin B_i \cup \{i\} : d(i, j) \leq c_n\}, \quad (4.25)$$

$$D_i = V \setminus (B_i \cup C_i \cup \{i\}), \quad (4.26)$$

where  $b_n = \ln(n)$  and  $c_n = \ln^2(n)$ . From here we define  $X_i$ ,  $U_i$ ,  $W_i$ ,  $\delta_1$ ,  $\delta_4$ ,  $\lambda$ , and  $\mu$  exactly as in Section 2.4.1 using our new definition for  $t_*$ . From (2.91), we get the following Corollary of Theorem 2.4.

**Corollary 4.7.** *Let  $T_n$  be the coupling time of the continuous-time heat-bath Glauber dynamics for the zero-field Ising model at inverse-temperature  $\beta$  on the graph  $G_n$  and let  $\delta_1$ ,  $\delta_4$  and  $\lambda$  be as defined above. Then*

$$\left| \mathbb{P}[T_n \leq z + t_c(n)] - e^{-\lambda} \right| \leq (\delta_1 + \delta_4)e^\lambda. \quad (4.27)$$

## 4.3 Proof of Theorem 4.2

In this section we use Corollary 4.7 to prove Theorem 4.2 by bounding  $\lambda$  and showing that  $\delta_1$  and  $\delta_4$  go to zero as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . This is done in Lemmas 4.8, 4.9, and 4.10. The proofs of these require some additional lemmas concerning properties of the update histories which have been deferred to Section 4.4.

We begin by bounding  $\lambda$ . Note that bounding  $\lambda$  is enough to show that there is a subsequence of graphs on which  $\lambda$  converges as required by Theorem 4.2.

**Lemma 4.8.** *Using the above set-up,*

$$\limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \lambda \leq \max(e^{-z}, e^{-(1-\beta\Delta)z}), \quad (4.28)$$

and for small enough  $\beta$  there exists a constant  $C \in (0, 1)$  such that

$$\liminf_{n \rightarrow \infty} \lambda \geq C \min(e^{-z}, e^{-(1-\beta\Delta)z}). \quad (4.29)$$

*Proof.* Starting with the definition of  $\lambda$ , we have

$$\lambda = \sum_{i \in V} \mathbb{E} \left[ \frac{X_i}{X_i + U_i} I[X_i + U_i \geq 1] \right] \quad (4.30)$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^n \mathbb{P}(X_i = 1) \mathbb{E} \left[ \frac{1}{1 + U_i} \middle| X_i = 1 \right] \quad (4.31)$$

$$= n m_{t_*} \mathbb{E} \left[ \frac{1}{1 + U_i} \middle| X_i = 1 \right], \quad (4.32)$$

where we have used that  $X_i$  is zero-one, (4.16), and the transitivity of the graph. Since  $U_i$  is non-negative we have

$$\mathbb{E} \left[ \frac{1}{1 + U_i} \middle| X_i = 1 \right] \leq 1 \quad (4.33)$$

and so by Corollary 4.5,  $\lambda \leq n m_{t_*} \leq \max(e^{-z}, e^{-(1-\beta\Delta)z})$ , establishing (4.28).

By Jensen's inequality

$$\mathbb{E} \left[ \frac{1}{1 + U_i} \middle| X_i = 1 \right] \geq \frac{1}{\mathbb{E}[1 + U_i | X_i = 1]} \quad (4.34)$$

$$= \frac{1}{1 + \mathbb{E}[U_i | X_i = 1]}, \quad (4.35)$$

so in order to find a lower bound for  $\lambda$  we will find an upper bound to  $\mathbb{E}[U_i | X_i = 1]$ .

Now by Lemma 4.11, there exists a  $C_1 > 0$  such that for small enough  $\beta$ ,

$$\mathbb{E}[U_i | X_i = 1] = \sum_{j \in B_i} \mathbb{P}[X_j = 1 | X_i = 1] \quad (4.36)$$

$$\leq |B_i| m_{t_*} + C_1 \sum_{k=1}^{\lfloor b_n \rfloor} P_n(k) e^{-k} \quad (4.37)$$

$$\leq |B_i| m_{t_*} + C_1 \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} P_n(k) e^{-k}. \quad (4.38)$$

By Corollary 4.5,  $m_{t_*} \leq \max(e^{-z}, e^{-(1-\beta\Delta)z})/n$ , and from (4.1),  $|B_i| \leq Q_n(\ln n) \leq Q_n(\ln^2 n) = o(n)$ . So as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , the first term vanishes, and from (4.1) we have that for some  $C_2 > 0$ ,

$$\limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left( C_1 \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} P_n(k) e^{-k} \right) \leq C_2. \quad (4.39)$$



Hence

$$\liminf_{n \rightarrow \infty} \lambda \geq \frac{1}{1 + C_2} n m_{t_*} \quad (4.40)$$

$$\geq C \min(e^{-z}, e^{-(1-\beta\Delta)z}) \quad (4.41)$$

for some  $C \in (0, 1)$ , since  $m_{t_*} \geq \frac{1}{n} \min(e^{-z}, e^{-(1-\beta\Delta)z})$  by Corollary 4.5.  $\square$

**Lemma 4.9.** *Let  $\delta_1$  be as defined in (2.78). Then at any inverse temperature  $\beta \geq 0$ ,*

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \delta_1 = 0. \quad (4.42)$$

*Proof.* Starting with the definition of  $\delta_1$ , we have

$$\delta_1 = \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{k=0}^{|B_i|} \mathbb{P}[X_i = 1, U_i = k] \mathbb{E} \left| \frac{\mathbb{P}[X_i = 1, U_i = k | W_i]}{\mathbb{P}[X_i = 1, U_i = k]} - 1 \right| \quad (4.43)$$

$$= n \sum_{k=0}^{|B_i|} \mathbb{E} |\mathbb{P}[X_i = 1, U_i = k | W_i] - \mathbb{P}[X_i = 1, U_i = k]|, \quad (4.44)$$

by the transitivity of the graph. Define the events

$$A_1 = \{\exists j \in B_i \cup \{i\}, \exists t \in [0, t_*] : \mathcal{H}_j(t) \not\subseteq B(i, (c_n + b_n)/2)\} \quad (4.45)$$

and

$$A_2 = \{\exists j \in D_i, \exists t \in [0, t_*] : \mathcal{H}_j(t) \cap B(i, (c_n + b_n)/2) \neq \emptyset\} \quad (4.46)$$

as well as their intersection

$$A = A_1 \cap A_2. \quad (4.47)$$

From Lemma 3.15,

$$\mathbb{P}[X_i = 1, U_i = j | A^c, W_i] = \mathbb{P}[X_i = 1, U_i = j | A^c]. \quad (4.48)$$

Continuing on from (4.44), we split the probabilities into

$$\delta_1 = n \sum_{k=0}^{|B_i|} \mathbb{E} \left| \mathbb{P}[X_i = 1, U_i = k | W_i, A] \mathbb{P}[A | W_i] - \mathbb{P}[X_i = 1, U_i = k | A] \mathbb{P}[A] + \right. \quad (4.49)$$

$$\left. \mathbb{P}(X_i = 1, U_i = k | A^c) (\mathbb{P}[A^c | W_i] - \mathbb{P}[A^c]) \right| \leq n(|B_i| + 1) \mathbb{E} [|\mathbb{P}[A | W_i] - \mathbb{P}[A]| + |\mathbb{P}[A^c | W_i] - \mathbb{P}[A^c]|] \quad (4.50)$$

$$= n(|B_i| + 1) \mathbb{E} [|\mathbb{P}[A | W_i] - \mathbb{P}[A]| + |1 - \mathbb{P}[A | W_i] - (1 - \mathbb{P}[A])|] \quad (4.51)$$

$$\leq n(|B_i| + 1) \mathbb{E} [\mathbb{P}[A | W_i] + \mathbb{P}[A] + \mathbb{P}[A | W_i] + \mathbb{P}[A]] \quad (4.52)$$

$$= 2n(|B_i| + 1) (\mathbb{E}[\mathbb{P}[A | W_i]] + \mathbb{P}[A]) \quad (4.53)$$

$$= 4n(|B_i| + 1) \mathbb{P}[A]. \quad (4.54)$$

For  $A_1$  to hold, we must have a history  $\mathcal{H}_j$  that extends from a distance of no more than  $b_n$  from  $i$  to a distance of at least  $(b_n + c_n)/2$  from  $i$ . That is, it must extend a distance of at least  $(c_n - b_n)/2$ . For  $A_2$  to hold, we must have a history  $\mathcal{H}'_j$  that extends from a distance of at least  $c_n$  from  $i$  to a distance of no more than  $(b_n + c_n)/2$  from  $i$ . That is, it must extend a distance of at least  $(c_n - b_n)/2$ . So for either  $A_1$  or  $A_2$  to hold, there must exist a history that spreads at least distance  $(c_n - b_n)/2$  away from its starting vertex. By a union bound

$$\mathbb{P}[A] \leq \mathbb{P}[A_1 \cup A_2] \quad (4.55)$$

$$\leq \mathbb{P} \left[ \bigcup_{j \in V} \{\mathcal{H}_j \not\subseteq B(j, (c_n - b_n)/2) \times [0, t_*]\} \right] \quad (4.56)$$

$$\leq \sum_{j \in V} \mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_j \not\subseteq B(j, (c_n - b_n)/2) \times [0, t_*]] \quad (4.57)$$

$$= n \mathbb{P} \left[ \bigcup_{u \in [0, t_*]} \mathcal{H}_j(t_* - u) \not\subseteq B(j, (c_n - b_n)/2) \right]. \quad (4.58)$$

Combining this with Lemma 4.12 we get that

$$\delta_1 \leq 4n^2(|B_i| + 1) \exp(t_* \Delta^2 - \ln(\Delta)(c_n - b_n)/2) \quad (4.59)$$

$$\leq 4 \exp(\Delta^2 z) n^{2+\Delta^2/(1-\beta\Delta)} (|B_i| + 1) \exp(-\ln(\Delta)(c_n - b_n)/2) \quad (4.60)$$

using Corollary 4.6. Recalling our choices of  $b_n = \ln(n)$  and  $c_n = \ln(n)^2$ , we have

$$\delta_1 \leq 4e^{\Delta^2 z} n^{2+\Delta^2/(1-\beta\Delta)} Q_n(b_n) e^{-\frac{\ln(\Delta)}{2} c_n} e^{\frac{\ln(\Delta)}{2} b_n} \quad (4.61)$$

$$= 4e^{\Delta^2 z} n^{2+\Delta^2/(1-\beta\Delta)+\log(\Delta)/2} Q_n(b_n) e^{-\frac{\ln(\Delta)}{2} \ln^2(n)} \quad (4.62)$$

$$\leq 4e^{\Delta^2 z} n^{2+\Delta^2/(1-\beta\Delta)+\log(\Delta)/2} Q_n(\ln^2(n)) e^{-\frac{\ln(\Delta)}{2} \ln^2(n)}, \quad (4.63)$$

which by (4.1) goes to 0 as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .

□

**Lemma 4.10.** *Let  $\delta_4$  be as defined in (2.79). Then for small enough  $\beta$ ,*

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \delta_4 = 0. \quad (4.64)$$

*Proof.* Starting with the definition of  $\delta_4$ , we have

$$\delta_4 = \sum_{i=1}^n (\mathbb{E}[X_i Z_i] + \mathbb{E}[X_i] \mathbb{E}[X_i + U_i + Z_i]) \quad (4.65)$$

$$= n \mathbb{E}[X_i Z_i] + n m_{t_*}^2 (1 + |B_i| + |C_i|) \quad (4.66)$$

$$= n m_{t_*} \mathbb{E}[Z_i | X_i = 1] + n m_{t_*}^2 (1 + |B_i| + |C_i|) \quad (4.67)$$

$$\leq C_z \mathbb{E}[Z_i | X_i = 1] + \frac{C_z^2}{n} (1 + |B_i| + |C_i|) \quad (4.68)$$

$$\leq C_z \mathbb{E}[Z_i | X_i = 1] + \frac{C_z^2}{n} (1 + 2Q_n(\ln^2(n))), \quad (4.69)$$

where using Corollary 4.5

$$C_z = \max(e^{-z}, e^{-(1-\beta\Delta)z}). \quad (4.70)$$

Now from (4.1), the second term above vanishes as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . So we turn our attention to the first term. From Lemma 4.11, there exists a  $C > 0$  such that for small enough  $\beta$ ,

$$\mathbb{E}[Z_i | X_i = 1] = \sum_{j \in C_i} \mathbb{P}[X_j = 1 | X_i = 1] \quad (4.71)$$

$$\leq \sum_{j \in C_i} [m_{t_*} + C e^{-d(i,j)}] \quad (4.72)$$

$$\leq \sum_{j \in C_i} \left[ \frac{C_z}{n} + C e^{-b_n} \right] \quad (4.73)$$

$$= |C_i| \left( \frac{C_z}{n} + \frac{C}{n} \right) \quad (4.74)$$

$$\leq Q_n(\ln^2(n)) \left( \frac{C_z}{n} + \frac{C}{n} \right), \quad (4.75)$$

where we have again used Corollary 4.5. From (4.1), we get that  $\delta_4$  goes to zero as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .  $\square$

## 4.4 Additional lemmas

This section contains the statements and proofs for a number of lemmas concerning properties of the update histories that are required for the proofs in Section 4.3.

**Lemma 4.11.** *There exists a constant  $C > 0$  such that for sufficiently small  $\beta$ ,*

$$\mathbb{P}[X_j = 1 | X_i = 1] \leq m_{t_*} + Ce^{-k}, \quad (4.76)$$

where  $k = d(i, j)$  is the distance between vertices  $i$  and  $j$  on a transitive graph.

*Proof.* There are two ways in which the update history of vertex  $j$  can survive until time 0. The update history can survive without intersecting with the update history of vertex  $i$  or the update history of vertex  $j$  can merge with the update history of vertex  $i$  (whose survival we are conditioning on). Breaking up the probability this way we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{P}[X_j = 1 | X_i = 1] &= \mathbb{P}[X_j = 1, \mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j = \emptyset | X_i = 1] \\ &\quad + \mathbb{P}[X_j = 1, \mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j \neq \emptyset | X_i = 1] \end{aligned} \quad (4.77)$$

$$\leq \mathbb{P}[X_j = 1, \mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j = \emptyset | X_i = 1] + \mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j \neq \emptyset | X_i = 1]. \quad (4.78)$$

The result follows from Lemmas 4.13 and 4.14.  $\square$

Our next lemma is based on [48, Lemma 2.1] and bounds the speed at which the histories can spread through the graph.

**Lemma 4.12.** *On any graph, the probability that the history of vertex  $i$  escapes a ball of radius  $l$  in time  $s$  is bounded by*

$$\mathbb{P} \left[ \bigcup_{u \in [0, s]} \mathcal{H}_i(t_* - u) \not\subseteq B(i, l) \right] \leq \exp(s\Delta^2 - l \ln \Delta). \quad (4.79)$$

*Proof.* Let  $\mathcal{W} = \{\mathbf{w} = (w_1, w_2, \dots, w_l) : w_1 = i, w_{k-1} \sim w_k\}$  be the set of length  $l$  sequences of adjacent vertices starting at vertex  $i$ . That is,  $\mathcal{W}$  is the set of all walks of length  $l - 1$  on  $G_n$  that start at  $i$ . If  $\mathcal{H}_i$  contains any vertex outside  $B(i, l)$  at a time  $u \in [t_* - s, t_*]$  then there must be some sequence  $w \in \mathcal{W}$  such that each  $w_k$  was updated

in order along the interval  $[t_* - s, t_*]$ . For any particular sequence  $w$ , let  $M_w$  be the event that each  $w_k$  was updated at some time  $t_k$  such that  $t_* > t_k > t_* - s$  and  $t_{k-1} > t_k$ .

For  $M_w$  to occur, we require that the  $l$  independent rate 1 Poisson clocks associated with each  $w_k$  ring in a particular order along  $[t_* - s, t_*]$ . The probability of this is equal to the probability that a single rate 1 Poisson clock rings at least  $l$  times in  $[0, s]$ , or equivalently, a rate  $s$  Poisson clock rings at least  $l$  times in  $[0, 1]$ . So we have

$$\mathbb{P}[M_w] = \mathbb{P}[\text{Po}(s) \geq l], \quad (4.80)$$

where  $\text{Po}(s)$  is Poisson with rate  $s$ . By a union bound over  $\mathcal{W}$ ,

$$\mathbb{P} \left[ \bigcup_{u \in [0, s]} \mathcal{H}_i(t_* - u) \not\subseteq B(i, l) \right] \leq \mathbb{P} \left[ \bigcup_{w \in \mathcal{W}} M_w \right] \quad (4.81)$$

$$\leq \Delta^{l-1} \mathbb{P}[\text{Po}(s) \geq l]. \quad (4.82)$$

The moment generating function of a Poisson random variable with rate  $s$  is

$$M(t) = \exp(s(e^t - 1)). \quad (4.83)$$

Using a Chernoff bound, we have for every  $t > 0$ ,

$$\mathbb{P}[\text{Po}(s) \geq l] \leq \exp(s(e^t - 1) - tl). \quad (4.84)$$

Overall we have

$$\mathbb{P} \left[ \bigcup_{u \in [0, s]} \mathcal{H}_i(t_* - u) \not\subseteq B(i, l) \right] \leq \Delta^{l-1} \exp(s(e^t - 1) - tl) \quad (4.85)$$

$$\leq \exp(s(e^t - 1) + l(\ln \Delta - t)). \quad (4.86)$$

Choosing  $t = 2 \ln \Delta$ ,

$$\mathbb{P} \left[ \bigcup_{u \in [0, s]} \mathcal{H}_i(t_* - u) \not\subseteq B(i, l) \right] \leq \exp(s(\Delta^2 - 1) - l \ln \Delta) \quad (4.87)$$

$$\leq \exp(s\Delta^2 - l \ln \Delta). \quad (4.88)$$

□

**Lemma 4.13.** *Let  $i$  and  $j$  be two vertices on a vertex transitive graph. Then*

$$\mathbb{P}[X_j = 1, \mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j = \emptyset | X_i = 1] \leq m_{t_*}. \quad (4.89)$$

*Proof.* To begin

$$\mathbb{P}[X_j = 1, \mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j = \emptyset | X_i = 1] = \mathbb{P}[X_i = 1]^{-1} \mathbb{P}[X_i = 1, X_j = 1, \mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j = \emptyset] \quad (4.90)$$

$$= \frac{\mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_i(0) \neq \emptyset, \mathcal{H}_j(0) \neq \emptyset, \mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j = \emptyset]}{\mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_i(0) \neq \emptyset]}. \quad (4.91)$$

By Lemma 3.16,

$$\mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_i(0) \neq \emptyset, \mathcal{H}_j(0) \neq \emptyset, \mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j = \emptyset] \leq \mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_i(0) \neq \emptyset]^2 \quad (4.92)$$

and so

$$\mathbb{P}[X_j = 1, \mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j = \emptyset | X_i = 1] \leq \mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_i(0) \neq \emptyset] \quad (4.93)$$

$$= m_{t_*}. \quad (4.94)$$

□

The final two lemmas use two quantities,  $\chi(\mathcal{H}_A)$  and  $\mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_A)$ , which in some sense measure the horizontal and vertical size of  $\mathcal{H}_A$  respectively. Define

$$\chi(\mathcal{H}_i) = \# \{((u, t), (v, t)) \in \mathcal{H}_i\}, \quad (4.95)$$

which counts the total number of spatial edges in  $\mathcal{H}_i$  and define

$$\mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_i) = \sum_{i \in V} \int_0^{t_*} I_{(i,t) \in \mathcal{H}_i} dt, \quad (4.96)$$

which is the sum of the lengths of all the temporal edges in  $\mathcal{H}_i$ .

The following lemma contains some similarities to the proof of [47, Lemma 2.1]. Indeed, the quantity

$$\mathbb{P}[\{\mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j \neq \emptyset\} \cap \{\mathcal{H}_i(0) \cup \mathcal{H}_j(0) \neq \emptyset\}], \quad (4.97)$$

which appears in (4.103) below, is equivalent to the expression

$$\mathbb{P}[A \in \text{RED}_A^*] \quad (4.98)$$

when  $A = \{i, j\}$  using the notation of that paper. We use their method to bound this probability, but add some extra steps for clarity.

**Lemma 4.14.** *Let  $i$  and  $j$  be two vertices separated by distance  $k$  on a transitive graph  $G = (V, E)$  with fixed degree  $\Delta$ . Then there exists a  $C$  such that for sufficiently small  $\beta$ ,*

$$\mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j \neq \emptyset | X_i = 1] \leq C e^{-k}. \quad (4.99)$$

*Proof.* Firstly,

$$\mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j \neq \emptyset | X_i = 1] = \frac{\mathbb{P}[\{\mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j \neq \emptyset\} \cap \{X_i = 1\}]}{\mathbb{P}[X_i = 1]} \quad (4.100)$$

$$\leq m_{t_*}^{-1} \mathbb{P}[\{\mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j \neq \emptyset\} \cap \{X_i = 1\}] \quad (4.101)$$

$$\leq m_{t_*}^{-1} \mathbb{P}[\{\mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j \neq \emptyset\} \cap (\{X_i = 1\} \cup \{X_j = 1\})] \quad (4.102)$$

$$= m_{t_*}^{-1} \mathbb{P}[\{\mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j \neq \emptyset\} \cap \{\mathcal{H}_i(0) \cup \mathcal{H}_j(0) \neq \emptyset\}], \quad (4.103)$$

since

$$\{X_i = 1\} = \{\mathcal{H}_i(0) \neq \emptyset\}. \quad (4.104)$$

Proceeding backwards from  $t_*$ , define  $S$  to be the random time at which  $\mathcal{H}_i(t) \cup \mathcal{H}_j(t)$  first reduced to less than two vertices, or define  $S = 0$  if the combined histories contain at least two vertices all the way to time 0. (We cannot say that  $S$  is the random time at which  $\mathcal{H}_i(t) \cup \mathcal{H}_j(t)$  first reduces to a single vertex since a single update may remove more than one vertex. See Figure 2.4 for an example.) Note that

$$\{\mathcal{H}_i(0) \cup \mathcal{H}_j(0) \neq \emptyset\} \subseteq \{\mathcal{F}(v, 0, S) \neq \emptyset\}, \quad (4.105)$$

where  $v$  is either the single vertex  $v = \mathcal{H}_i(S) \cup \mathcal{H}_j(S)$  in the case that the histories coalesce to a single point at  $S$ , or any arbitrary single vertex otherwise. We also note that

$$\{\mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j \neq \emptyset\} \subseteq \{\chi((\mathcal{H}_i \cup \mathcal{H}_j) \cap V \times [S, t_*]) \geq k\}, \quad (4.106)$$

since there must be at least  $k$  spatial edges for the histories to meet. The event on the right hand side of (4.106) depends only on the update sequence in  $[S, t_*]$ . The event on the right hand side of (4.105) depends only on the update sequence in  $[0, S]$ . Therefore, given  $S$ , these events are independent and

$$\begin{aligned} & \mathbb{P}[\{\mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j \neq \emptyset\} \cap \{\mathcal{H}_i(0) \cup \mathcal{H}_j(0) \neq \emptyset\} | S = t_s] \\ & \leq \mathbb{P}[\mathcal{F}(v, 0, S) \neq \emptyset | S = t_s] \mathbb{P}[\chi((\mathcal{H}_i \cup \mathcal{H}_j) \cap V \times [S, t_*]) \geq k | S = t_s] \end{aligned} \quad (4.107)$$

$$= m_{t_s} \mathbb{P}[\chi((\mathcal{H}_i \cup \mathcal{H}_j) \cap V \times [S, t_*]) \geq k | S = t_s] \quad (4.108)$$

and so

$$\mathbb{P}[\{\mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j \neq \emptyset\} \cap \{\mathcal{H}_i(0) \cup \mathcal{H}_j(0) \neq \emptyset\}] \leq \mathbb{E}[I_{\chi((\mathcal{H}_i \cup \mathcal{H}_j) \cap V \times [S, t_*]) \geq k} m_S] \quad (4.109)$$

$$\leq \mathbb{E}[I_{\chi(\mathcal{H}_i \cup \mathcal{H}_j) \geq k} m_S]. \quad (4.110)$$

From Corollary 4.4,

$$m_S \leq e^{t_* - S} m_{t_*} \quad (4.111)$$

and since  $|\mathcal{H}_i(t) \cup \mathcal{H}_j(t)| \geq 2$  for  $t \in (S, t_*]$ ,

$$t_* - S \leq \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_i \cup \mathcal{H}_j)/2. \quad (4.112)$$

So

$$\mathbb{P}[\mathcal{H}_i \cap \mathcal{H}_j \neq \emptyset | X_i = 1] \leq m_{t_*}^{-1} m_{t_*} \mathbb{E}[I_{\chi(\mathcal{H}_i \cup \mathcal{H}_j) \geq k} e^{\mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_i \cup \mathcal{H}_j)/2}] \quad (4.113)$$

$$\leq \mathbb{E}[e^{\chi(\mathcal{H}_i \cup \mathcal{H}_j) - k} e^{\mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_i \cup \mathcal{H}_j)/2}] \quad (4.114)$$

$$= e^{-k} \mathbb{E}[e^{\chi(\mathcal{H}_i \cup \mathcal{H}_j) + \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_i \cup \mathcal{H}_j)/2}]. \quad (4.115)$$

From Lemma 4.15, for any  $\alpha > \ln(2)$  if

$$\tanh(\beta\Delta) \leq \frac{1 - 2e^{-\alpha}}{2(e^{\Delta(\alpha+1)} - e^{-\alpha})} \quad (4.116)$$

then

$$\mathbb{E}[e^{\chi(\mathcal{H}_i \cup \mathcal{H}_j) + \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_i \cup \mathcal{H}_j)/2}] \leq e^{2\alpha} \quad (4.117)$$

and we get the desired result by choosing  $C = \exp(2\alpha)$ .  $\square$

The last of our additional lemmas comes from [47, Lemma 3.1]. We have made our statement of the lemma slightly more precise and so we have rewritten both the lemma and proof out here along with our modifications. In particular, we have specified precisely how small  $\beta$  must be for the statement to hold.

**Lemma 4.15** ([47], Lemma 3.1). *Consider the update histories for the Ising heat-bath dynamics on a graph  $G = (V, E)$  with fixed degree  $\Delta$ . For any  $0 \leq \eta < 1$ ,  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$ , and  $\alpha > -\ln(1 - \eta)$ , if*

$$\tanh(\beta\Delta) \leq \frac{1 - \eta - e^{-\alpha}}{e^{(\alpha+\lambda)\Delta} - e^{-\alpha}}, \quad (4.118)$$

then for any  $A \subseteq V$ ,

$$\mathbb{E}[\exp(\lambda\chi(\mathcal{H}_A) + \eta\mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_A))] \leq \exp(\alpha|A|). \quad (4.119)$$

*Proof.* We first relax our histories to our alternative construction by observing that

$$\chi(\mathcal{H}_A) \leq \chi(\hat{\mathcal{H}}_A), \quad \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_A) \leq \mathcal{L}(\hat{\mathcal{H}}_A). \quad (4.120)$$

Let  $W_s = |\hat{\mathcal{H}}_A(t_* - s)|$ , let  $Y_s = \chi(\hat{\mathcal{H}}_A \cap V \times [t_* - s, t_*])$  count the total number of spatial edges observed in the history by time  $t_* - s$  and let  $Z_s = \mathcal{L}(\hat{\mathcal{H}}_A \cap V \times [t_* - s, t_*])$ .



Initially,  $W_0 = |A|$ ,  $Y_0 = 0$ , and  $Z_0 = 0$ . Recall that an oblivious update of a vertex causes it to be removed from the history and that a non-oblivious update causes the history to branch out to its  $\Delta$  neighbours. Oblivious updates occur at rate  $\theta W_s$  and cause  $W_s$  to decrease by 1. Non-oblivious updates occur at rate  $(1 - \theta)W_s$  and cause both  $W_s$  and  $Y_s$  to increase by no more than  $\Delta$ . The length,  $Z_s$ , grows as  $dZ_s = W_s ds$ . Therefore we can create a coupled process  $(\bar{W}_s, \bar{Y}_s, \bar{Z}_s)$  such that  $\bar{W}_s \geq W_s$ ,  $\bar{Y}_s \geq Y_s$ , and  $\bar{Z}_s \geq Z_s$  in the following way. We start with  $(\bar{W}_s, \bar{Y}_s, \bar{Z}_s) = (|A|, 0, 0)$  and at rate  $\theta \bar{W}_s$ ,  $\bar{W}_s$  decreases by 1; at rate  $(1 - \theta)\bar{W}_s$ , both  $\bar{W}_s$  and  $\bar{Y}_s$  increase by  $\Delta$ ; and  $\bar{Z}_s$  grows as  $d\bar{Z}_s = \bar{W}_s ds$ .

Let  $Q_s = \exp(\alpha \bar{W}_s + \lambda \bar{Y}_s + \eta \bar{Z}_s)$  where  $\alpha$ ,  $\lambda$ , and  $\eta$  are some fixed constants yet to be determined, and  $\alpha > -\ln(1 - \eta)$ . We have

$$\left. \frac{d}{ds} \mathbb{E}[Q_s | Q_{s_0}] \right|_{s=s_0} = \left( \eta + \theta(e^{-\alpha} - 1) + (1 - \theta)(e^{(\alpha+\lambda)\Delta} - 1) \right) \bar{W}_{s_0} Q_{s_0}, \quad (4.121)$$

which is non-positive when

$$\theta \geq \frac{\eta + e^{(\alpha+\lambda)\Delta} - 1}{e^{(\alpha+\lambda)\Delta} - e^{-\alpha}} \quad (4.122)$$

or in terms of the inverse temperature,  $\beta$ ,

$$\tanh(\beta\Delta) \leq \frac{1 - \eta - e^{-\alpha}}{e^{(\alpha+\lambda)\Delta} - e^{-\alpha}}. \quad (4.123)$$

Hence  $Q_s$  is a supermartingale when (4.123) holds. Define the stopping time

$$\tau = \inf\{s : \bar{W}_s = 0\}. \quad (4.124)$$

At this time, the histories have completely died out and  $\bar{Y}_s$  and  $\bar{Z}_s$  cannot grow any more. That is,  $\bar{Y}_\tau \geq \chi(\mathcal{H}_A)$  and  $\bar{Z}_\tau \geq \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_A)$ , and so  $\mathbb{E} \exp(\lambda \chi(\mathcal{H}_A) + \eta \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_A)) \leq \mathbb{E} Q_\tau$ . From optional stopping,

$$\mathbb{E}[Q_\tau] \leq \mathbb{E}[Q_0] \quad (4.125)$$

$$= \exp(\alpha|A|). \quad (4.126)$$

□

## Chapter 5

# Conclusion to Part I

In the first part of this thesis, we have examined the dynamics of the continuous-time Ising heat-bath Glauber process. We started by describing the discrete time dynamics, as well as the two coupled chains from which we define the coupling time. We then described how to ‘continuize’ the discrete time dynamics. It is the distribution of the coupling time of these continuous time dynamics that was the central object of our analysis. We proved that the asymptotic distributions of the discrete coupling time and the continuous coupling time are equivalent, using Proposition 2.1 which is applicable in much more generality. This was important to show, since our analysis focuses on the continuous-time dynamics, whereas our motivation for the study of the coupling time was that the discrete coupling time has the same distribution as the random running time of the ‘Coupling From the Past’ algorithm. We ended the introduction by giving a description of information percolation, as used by Lubetzky and Sly in [48], and of compound Poisson approximation, as described in [3].

In Chapter 3, we looked at the coupling-time on the cycle. Our main result was that at any inverse-temperature  $\beta$ , the coupling time converges to a Gumbel distribution. This confirmed, for  $d = 1$ , a conjecture in [12, Conjecture 7.1] that the coupling time of the Ising heat-bath process on the torus,  $G_L = (\mathbb{Z}/L\mathbb{Z})^d$ , converges to a Gumbel distribution for all  $\beta < \beta_c$ . We used the two techniques of information percolation, and compound Poisson approximation to construct the proof.

In Chapter 4, we extended the class of graphs considered from the cycle to a family of vertex-transitive graphs with fixed degree. We showed that as well as the  $d$ -dimensional tori, this family also included other classes of graphs which are of practical interest with respect to the Ising model. Our main result was that for sufficiently small  $\beta$ , the coupling time converges to a Gumbel distribution. This partially confirms, for  $d > 1$ ,

the afore mentioned conjecture in [12]. While our result does not hold up to the critical temperature as conjectured, it holds for a larger family of graphs.

Of particular note is that the main part of the proof in which we require  $\beta$  to be small concerns an object which is almost identical to a quantity used by Lubetzky and Sly in [47]. In [47], Lubetzky and Sly proved the existence of cutoff on a wide class of transitive graphs for  $\beta$  small enough. They later refined this proof in [48] to apply up to the critical temperature on  $d$ -dimensional lattices. In [49] they were able to specify how small  $\beta$  must be for cutoff to occur on any sequence of graphs with maximum degree  $\Delta$ .

This encourages future efforts to both refine our proof on the  $d$ -dimensional lattices so that it holds up all the way up to the critical  $\beta$ , and to specify a sufficiently small value of  $\beta$  for our result to hold in general. We would also like to investigate other problems for which information percolation can provide solutions. Information percolation has not only been successful in establishing cutoff for the Glauber dynamics for the Ising model, but has also recently been applied to cutoff for the Swendsen-Wang dynamics on the lattice [54] and cutoff for the random-cluster model [24]. We have shown that information percolation can also establish results concerning the coupling time.

Given that it is a relatively recent technique, we suspect that there exists a variety of new results which can be obtained using information percolation. In particular, in [12, Conjecture 2.7], it is conjectured that, for generic choices of parameters, the coupling time for the FK heat-bath coupling for the random-cluster model on  $d$ -dimensional lattices converges to a Gumbel distribution. Just as the coupling time for the Ising heat-bath coupling corresponds precisely to the coupon collector's problem when  $\beta = 0$ , there is also a special case in which the coupling time for the FK heat-bath coupling corresponds precisely to the coupon collector's problem (which has a known Gumbel limit). We expect that this Gumbel limit holds for a range of parameter values in addition to this special case, just as we observed for the Ising heat-bath dynamics.

## Part II

# Efficient Optimization for Statistical Inference

## Chapter 6

# Maximum Likelihood Location Mixtures

### 6.1 Introduction

Mixtures of distributions have been used to model a wide variety of phenomena, with successful applications in the fields of “astronomy, biology, genetics, medicine, psychiatry, economics, engineering, and marketing, among many other fields in the biological, physical, and social sciences” [52, Section 1.1.1]. Mixture models have been in use for over 100 years. In 1894, Pearson used a mixture of two normal densities to model the distribution of the ratio of forehead to body lengths of a sample of 1000 crabs [58]. His mixture of two normals was able to account for the skewness in the data, which a single normal could not model. Pearson suggested that this signalled the existence of two sub-populations of crabs; each associated with its own normal distribution.

However, we do not require that data comes from a mixture of distributions in any physical sense for mixtures to be a useful modelling tool. One of the traits that has contributed to the extent of the use of mixtures is that they provide a convenient semi-parametric way of modelling unknown distributions. They are particularly useful in situations where a parametric method is too restrictive to satisfactorily model the data, and a fully non-parametric method, such as kernel density estimation, may require evaluating a sum which contains more terms than desired. By way of illustration, Priebe in [60] discussed modelling a log normal density using a mixture of normals. With  $n = 10000$  observations, Priebe only required about 30 normals to obtain a good approximation. This is in contrast to a kernel density estimator which would contain 10000 terms.

A *mixture density* is a probability density function that can be written in the form

$$f_Q(\mathbf{x}) = \int_{\Omega} f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) \, dQ(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (6.1)$$

where  $f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta})$  is the *component density*, parametrised by  $\boldsymbol{\theta} \in \Omega$ , and  $Q$  is a probability distribution on  $\Omega$ , called the *mixing distribution*. In the case that  $Q$  is a discrete probability distribution, with probability masses  $p_j$  at points  $\boldsymbol{\theta}_j$ ,  $j = 1, \dots, m$ , the mixture density in (6.1) is a *finite mixture* and can be written

$$f_Q(\mathbf{x}) = f_{\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathbf{p}}(\mathbf{x}) = \sum_{j=1}^m p_j f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}_j). \quad (6.2)$$

In this chapter, we will be concerned only with finite mixtures on the real line, whose component densities are parametrised by a single shifting parameter,  $\theta$  (we may of course allow for other fixed parameters, for example normal distributions with varying locations but fixed variance). This is what we will call a *location mixture*, and it can be written as

$$f_{\mathbf{p}, \boldsymbol{\theta}} = \sum_{j=1}^m p_j f(x - \theta_j) \quad (6.3)$$

for a single component density  $f(x)$ . Looking only at mixtures of this form is not as restrictive as it may at first seem. Using a finite location mixture of normals, one can approximate any continuous density arbitrarily well [56].

A common question when using mixtures is the following. Let  $\mathbf{X} = (X_1, \dots, X_n)$  be a set of independent and identically distributed random variables, where each  $X_i$  has probability density function  $g(\mathbf{x})$ . Given  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_n)$ , an observed random sample of  $\mathbf{X}$ , and a component density  $f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta})$ , how do we choose the mixing distribution  $Q$  so that  $f_Q(\mathbf{x})$  is a good approximation for  $g(\mathbf{x})$ ? One answer to this question is to choose  $Q$  to maximise the likelihood.

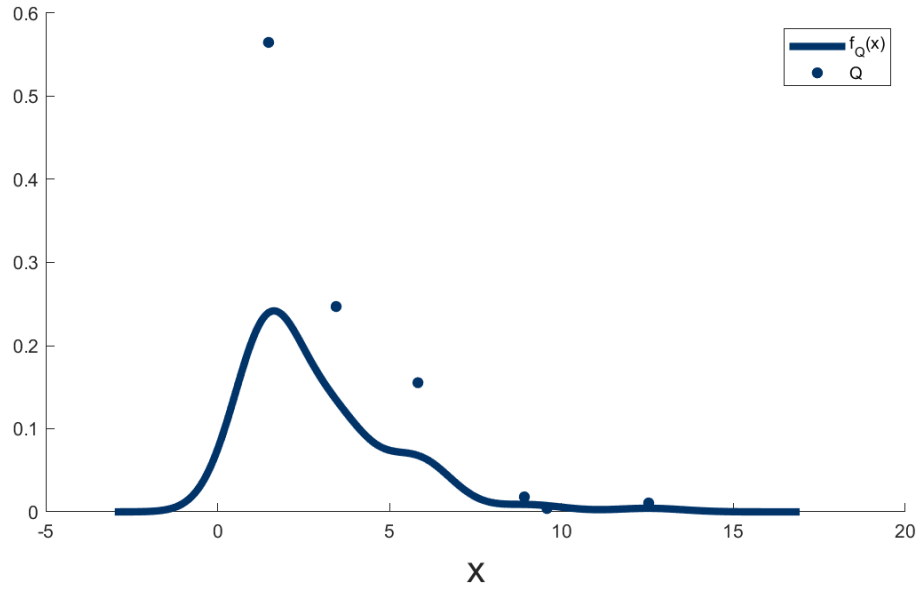
The *likelihood* of a distribution  $Q$  given  $\mathbf{x}$  is

$$L(Q; \mathbf{x}, f) = \prod_{i=1}^n f_Q(x_i). \quad (6.4)$$

Maximizing  $L(Q; \mathbf{x}, f)$  may be achieved by instead maximizing the *log likelihood*,

$$l(Q; \mathbf{x}, f) = \log L(Q; \mathbf{x}, f) = \sum_{i=1}^n \log f_Q(x_i), \quad (6.5)$$

since  $\log(x)$  is a strictly increasing function. In [42], Lindsay showed that provide that the likelihood is bounded, there exists a maximizing  $Q$  that has at most  $n$  points of support.



**Figure 6.1** – A maximum likelihood location mixture of  $n = 500$  points where the maximising mixing distribution,  $Q$ , has only 6 points of support.

This is a useful result because it means that the problem of finding a maximizing  $Q$  is an optimization problem having finite dimensions. It also justifies our decision to consider only finite mixtures in this chapter.

However, we often find that the maximizing  $Q$  has far fewer than  $n$  points of support. An example of this is shown in Figure 6.1. In this example we have taken  $n = 500$  points from a chi-squared distribution with 3 degrees of freedom and used a normal component density with fixed variance  $\sigma^2 = 1$  as our component density. The maximum likelihood mixing distribution  $Q$  has only 6 points of support (represented by points  $(\theta_j, p_j)$  for each probability mass  $p_j$  at  $\theta_j$ ), well short of the stated bound of 500. This behaviour is typical for maximum likelihood location mixtures, with the upper bound of  $n$  only being realised in pathological cases where the observations are spread widely apart.

The size of the support of the  $Q$  that maximizes (6.5) is the primary quantity of interest for this chapter. We define it as follows. Let  $\mathcal{Q}_n$  be the set of all discrete probability distributions on  $\mathbb{R}$  with no more than  $n$  points of support. Let

$$\hat{Q}_{\mathbf{x},f} = \{Q \in \mathcal{Q}_n : l(Q; \mathbf{x}) \geq l(Q'; \mathbf{x}), \forall Q' \in \mathcal{Q}_n\} \quad (6.6)$$

be the set of all global maximizers of (6.5). Then define

$$K_{\mathbf{x}} = K(\mathbf{x}; f) = \min\{m : \mathcal{Q}_m \cap \hat{Q}_{\mathbf{x},f} \neq \emptyset\} \quad (6.7)$$

which counts the smallest number of probability masses needed to maximize the likelihood.

There are a few considerations to be made here. The first is that there is not necessarily a unique mixing distribution that maximizes (6.5) and so we have defined the quantity of interest as the smallest number of points of support required for a maximizing distribution. However, in many cases, including when the component density is from the exponential family, we know that the maximizing mixing distribution is unique. This question of uniqueness was addressed by Lindsay in [42] and in [43] for continuous univariate component densities in the exponential family. A generalization of these results to discrete exponential families can be found in [45].

The second, is that our choice to consider only location mixtures is significant in that it guarantees that the likelihood is bounded so long as the component density is bounded. In general, this is not the case. Consider the likelihood function for a mixture of normals parametrized by both the mean and variance. We can create a mixture by placing equally weighted normals with very small variance at each  $x_i$  in our sample. This corresponds to a mixing distribution  $Q$  which places probability mass  $1/n$  at points  $(x_i, \sigma^2)$  for  $i = 1, \dots, n$ . As  $\sigma^2$  approaches zero, the density at each  $x_i$ ,  $f_Q(x_i)$ , increases without bound and so the likelihood is unbounded. There are a number of techniques that can be employed to ensure the likelihood is bounded such as restricting the parameter space appropriately or restricting the number of components to some number that grows slowly with  $n$  (the sieve method [26]).

The third, is that we should be careful to make a distinction between calculating  $K_{\mathbf{x}}$  and choosing an appropriate number of components for a mixture model. The former is simply a deterministic property of an optimization problem whereas the latter is an in-depth and difficult problem which involves consideration of properties such as consistency, and the use of techniques such as information criteria and likelihood ratio. This latter problem is discussed in [52, Chapter 6]. In particular, if each  $X_i$  comes from a distribution with density  $g(x) = f_Q(x)$  (that is,  $g(x)$  is a mixture density itself) then we may consider the ‘true’ number of components and using certain penalised log likelihood criteria, such as the Akaike information criterion (AIC) [1] or the Bayesian information criterion (BIC) [64], does not underestimate this quantity asymptotically [37]. This suggests that we should not expect  $K_{\mathbf{x}}$  (which is defined from an unpenalised likelihood) to necessarily be reflective of the properties of  $g(x)$ .



## 6.2 Summary of Lindsay

To obtain results concerning  $K_{\mathbf{x}}$  we will make use of the geometric approach employed by Lindsay in [42] and [43] and summarized later in [44, Chapter 5]. This section is dedicated to laying out the basics of this approach and summarising the results that are most relevant to our work. Here, we assume that the component densities,  $f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta})$ , are bounded, but we do not restrict ourselves to finite location mixtures on the real line.

### 6.2.1 The likelihood curve

The key to Lindsay's approach is to reformulate the problem from optimizing over all mixing distributions, to optimizing an appropriate objective function over a convex set in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . For a component density  $f$ , mixing distribution  $Q$ , and sample  $(x_1, \dots, x_n)$ , define the *likelihood vector*

$$\gamma(Q; \mathbf{x}, f) = (\gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_n) = (f_Q(x_1), \dots, f_Q(x_n)) \quad (6.8)$$

and the objective function

$$\mathcal{L}(\gamma) = \sum_{i=1}^n \ln(\gamma_i). \quad (6.9)$$

For fixed  $\mathbf{x}$  and  $f$ , let  $\mathcal{M}$  be the set of all possible values of the likelihood vector as  $Q$  varies over the set of mixing distributions. A maximizing mixing distribution may be found by first finding the  $\hat{\gamma} \in \mathcal{M}$  that maximizes  $\mathcal{L}(\gamma)$  and then solving for  $Q$  the  $n$  equations that arise by considering each component of

$$\gamma(Q; \mathbf{x}, f) = \hat{\gamma}. \quad (6.10)$$

To show that  $\mathcal{M}$  is a convex set, consider the *unicomponent likelihood vector*

$$\gamma(\boldsymbol{\theta}; \mathbf{x}, f) = (f_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(x_1), \dots, f_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(x_n)) \quad (6.11)$$

where  $f_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$  is the mixture density corresponding to the mixing distribution that places all its mass at  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ , that is,

$$f_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(x) = f(x; \boldsymbol{\theta}). \quad (6.12)$$

For any probability distribution,  $Q$ , the likelihood vector can be represented by

$$\gamma(Q; \mathbf{x}, f) = \int \gamma(\boldsymbol{\theta}; \mathbf{x}, f) dQ(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (6.13)$$

which for a finite mixture  $Q$ , with weights  $p_j$  assigned to parameters  $\theta_j$ , can be written as

$$\gamma(Q; \mathbf{x}, f) = \sum_{j=1}^m p_j \gamma(\theta_j; \mathbf{x}, f). \quad (6.14)$$

This leads to an alternative characterisation of  $\mathcal{M}$ . Define the *unicomponent likelihood curve*

$$\Gamma_{\mathbf{x},f} = \{\gamma(\theta; \mathbf{x}, f) : \theta \in \Omega\}. \quad (6.15)$$

Then

$$\mathcal{M} = \text{conv}(\Gamma_{\mathbf{x},f}), \quad (6.16)$$

where we use  $\text{conv}(A)$  to denote the convex hull of  $A$ . We now state the following Theorem taken directly from [44, Theorem 18] which is a consequence of the convexity of  $\mathcal{M}$ , and the concavity of  $\mathcal{L}(\gamma)$ .

**Theorem 6.1** ([44]). *Suppose that  $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x},f}$  is closed and bounded and that  $\mathcal{M}$  contains at least one point with positive likelihood. Then there exists a unique  $\hat{\gamma} \in \partial\mathcal{M}$ , the boundary of  $\mathcal{M}$ , such that  $\hat{\gamma}$  maximizes  $\mathcal{L}(\gamma)$  over  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

In addition to this, in [44, Theorem 21] is stated the following.

**Theorem 6.2** ([44]). *The solution  $\hat{\gamma}$  can be represented as  $\gamma(\hat{Q}; \mathbf{x}, f)$ , where  $\hat{Q}$  has no more than  $n$  points of support.*

This gives us our first bound on  $K_{\mathbf{x}}$ : for component densities that produce a closed and bounded likelihood curve,

$$K_{\mathbf{x}} \leq n. \quad (6.17)$$

### 6.2.2 All points separated by $\alpha$

Lindsay states that for normal mixtures with fixed variance,  $\sigma^2$ , “one can construct sets of data for which the bound  $[K_{\mathbf{x}} = n]$  is attained simply by spreading the observations widely apart,” [44, Section 5.2]. Here we make this intuition concrete by saying how far apart we should spread our observations to ensure that the mixing distribution has  $n$  separate components.

**Theorem 6.3.** *Let  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_n)$  be the sample for which we are finding a maximum likelihood location mixture using  $f(x)$  as our component density. Let  $f(x)$  be a unimodal density on  $\mathbb{R}$ , symmetric about  $x = 0$ , and such that the conditions of Theorem 6.1 hold. Let  $\alpha > 0$  be such that*

$$\frac{f(\alpha/2)}{f(0)} < \frac{1}{n} \left( \frac{n-1}{n} \right)^{n-1}. \quad (6.18)$$

Then if for all  $i \neq j$ ,  $|x_i - x_j| > \alpha$  we must have  $K_{\mathbf{x}} = n$ .

*Proof.* First consider constructing the maximum likelihood mixture density using no more than  $n - 1$  components. Let  $\hat{f}_{n-1}$  be this maximum likelihood mixture density of  $\mathbf{x}$  with no more than  $n - 1$  components and let  $L_{n-1}$  be the corresponding likelihood. Let  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$  and  $\mathbf{p}$  be the locations and weights for the probability masses of  $\hat{f}_{n-1}$ . Since all the  $x_i$  are separated by at least  $\alpha$ , there exists an  $x_{i^*}$  such that  $|x_{i^*} - \theta_j| > \frac{\alpha}{2}$  for all  $j$ . Hence

$$\hat{f}_{n-1}(x_{i^*}) < f(\alpha/2), \quad (6.19)$$

and so

$$L_{n-1} < f(\alpha/2) \prod_{i \neq i^*} \hat{f}_{n-1}(x_i). \quad (6.20)$$

We will now construct a mixture density that has one more component than  $\hat{f}_{n-1}$ . We do this by scaling all the components of  $\hat{f}_{n-1}$  by a factor of  $\frac{n-1}{n}$  and introducing a new component with parameters  $(\theta, p) = (x_{i^*}, \frac{1}{n})$ . Call this function  $f_n^*$  and the corresponding likelihood  $L_n$ . At each  $x_i \neq x_{i^*}$  the likelihood has decreased by  $(n-1)/n$  and at  $x_{i^*}$  the likelihood is at least  $f(0)/n$ . So

$$L_n > \frac{f(0)}{n} \left( \frac{n-1}{n} \right)^{n-1} \prod_{i \neq i^*} \hat{f}_{n-1}(x_i). \quad (6.21)$$

By (6.18), we get that  $L_n > L_{n-1}$ . Since the likelihood strictly increases when we allow an additional component, the maximum likelihood solution must have at least  $n$  components. By Theorem 6.2, the maximum likelihood solution cannot have any more than  $n$  components and so  $K_{\mathbf{x}} = n$ .  $\square$

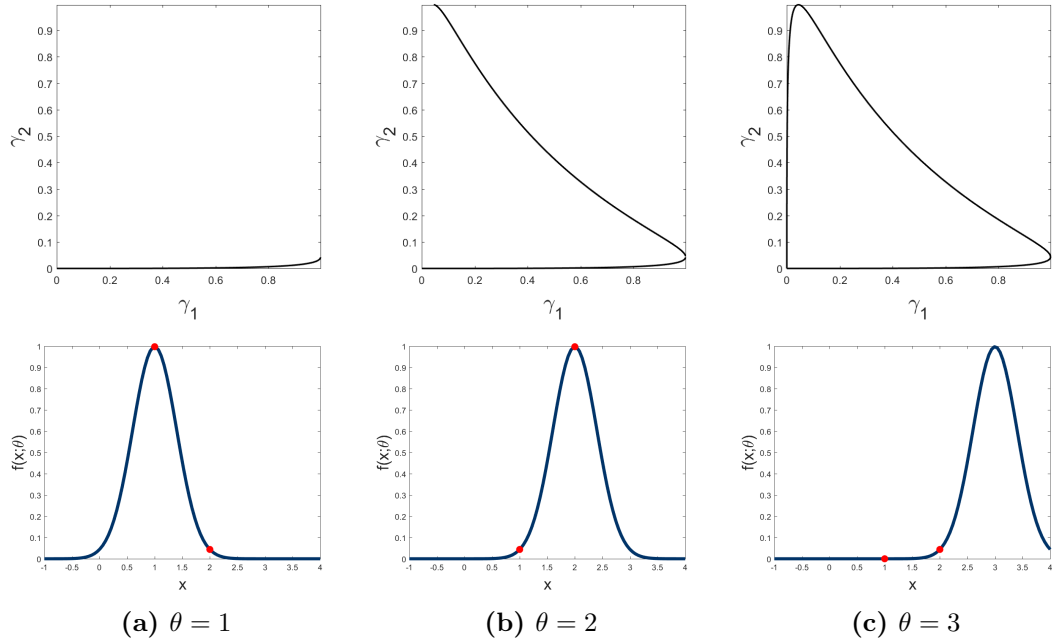
### 6.2.3 An example likelihood curve

In simple cases, we can plot the likelihood curve,  $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x},f}$ , and objective function,  $\mathcal{L}$ , along with the maximizing point,  $\hat{\gamma}$ . In particular, when  $n = 2$ ,  $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x},f} \subset \mathbb{R}^2$  and if the component density is smoothly parametrized by a single parameter, then we can plot  $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x},f}$  by tracing out  $\gamma(\theta; \mathbf{x}, f)$  as we vary  $\theta$ .

For example, suppose our sample is made up of two points,  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, x_2) = (1, 2)$ , and suppose our component density is normal with variance  $\sigma_2 = 0.4^2$  and parametrized by  $\theta$ , that is,

$$f(x; \theta) = \frac{1}{0.4\sqrt{2\pi}} \exp\left(-\frac{(x - \theta)^2}{2 \cdot 0.4^2}\right). \quad (6.22)$$

Then the corresponding likelihood curve can be traced out as we increase  $\theta$  from  $-\infty$  to  $\infty$  as shown in Figure 6.2.



**Figure 6.2** – A simple example of a likelihood curve. The component density,  $f(x; \theta)$ , as defined in (6.22), is shown in blue for  $\theta = 1, 2$ , and  $3$ . Each value of  $\theta$  contributes a point to  $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x}, f}$  whose coordinates are given by  $(f(1; \theta), f(2; \theta))$  (represented by the heights of the red circles). As we increase  $\theta$  from  $-\infty$  to  $\infty$  we trace out more of  $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x}, f}$ .

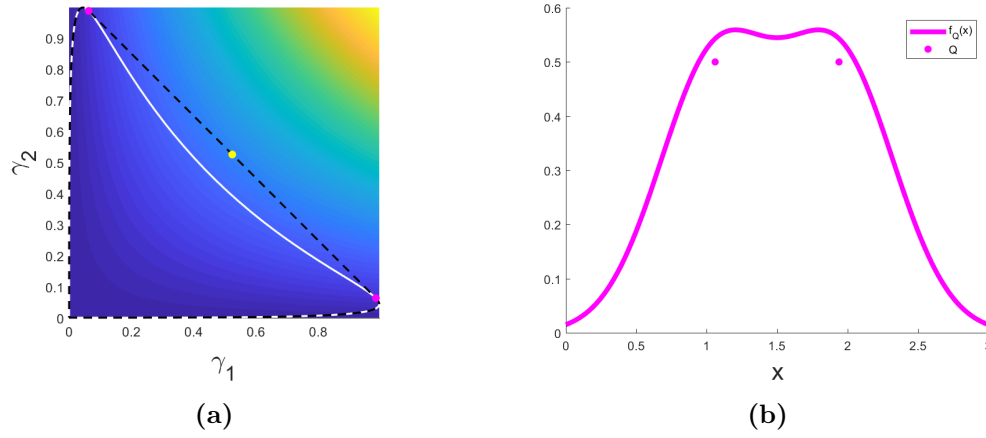
The set of possible values of the likelihood vector,  $\mathcal{M}$ , is given by the convex hull of  $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x}, f}$ , the boundary of which is marked along with  $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x}, f}$  in Figure 6.3a and overlaid on a heat map of  $\mathcal{L}(\gamma)$ . The maximizing point,  $\hat{\gamma}$ , is marked with a yellow dot and lies on the boundary of  $\text{conv}(\Gamma_{\mathbf{x}, f})$  as predicted by Theorem 6.1. This point may be written as the convex combination of two points in  $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x}, f}$ ,

$$\hat{\gamma} = \sum_{j=1}^2 p_j \gamma(\theta_j; \mathbf{x}, f) \quad (6.23)$$

and we represent the two points,  $\gamma(\theta_1; \mathbf{x}, f)$  and  $\gamma(\theta_2; \mathbf{x}, f)$  with magenta dots.

The mixture  $\hat{Q}$  that satisfies  $\hat{\gamma} = \gamma(\hat{Q}; \mathbf{x}, f)$  is the one that places masses  $p_1$  and  $p_2$  at locations  $\theta_1$  and  $\theta_2$  and it is plotted in Figure 6.3b by two magenta points at  $(\theta_1, p_1)$  and  $(\theta_2, p_2)$  along with the overall mixture density  $f_{\hat{Q}}(x)$ .

*Remark 6.4.* Note that in this example, while  $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x}, f}$  is bounded, it is not closed (it does not contain the limit point  $(0, 0)$ ), counter to the requirements of Theorems 6.1 and 6.2. In fact, any positive density whose support is the whole real line will not contain the limit point  $\mathbf{0}$  (where  $\mathbf{0}$  represents the zero vector in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ ). However, since  $\mathbf{0}$  is clearly not going to be a part of a maximizing mixture, we are safe to apply both theorems if



**Figure 6.3** – The geometric relationship between the likelihood curve (a) and the maximizing mixture density (b). In (a), the boundary of  $\text{conv}(\Gamma_{\mathbf{x},f})$  is shown as a dashed black line,  $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x},f}$  is the white curve, the heat map shows the objective function (likelihood increases from blue to yellow) and  $\hat{\gamma}$  is marked with a yellow dot. This point is a convex combination of the two magenta points. These two magenta points correspond to the two probability masses in the maximizing mixing distribution (b).

$\Gamma \cup \{\mathbf{0}\}$  is closed. A more detailed discussion concerning how to relax the requirement that the set  $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x},f}$  be closed can be found in [44, Section 5.2.2].

#### 6.2.4 Gradient characterization

Another important construction due to Lindsay is the gradient function

$$D_Q(\boldsymbol{\theta}; \mathbf{x}, f) = -n + \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{f(x_i; \boldsymbol{\theta})}{f_Q(x_i)}. \quad (6.24)$$

For each value of  $\boldsymbol{\theta} \in \Omega$ , this is the derivative of  $l(Q; \mathbf{x}, f)$  as we move along the path parametrized by

$$(1-p)Q + p\Delta_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} \quad (6.25)$$

evaluated at  $p = 0$  and where  $\Delta_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$  is a degenerate distribution that places all of its mass at  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ . In [42, Theorem 4.1], Lindsay showed we can characterise the maximizing mixture by three equivalent conditions. The statement of the Theorem here is taken from [44, Theorem 19].

**Theorem 6.5** ([44]). *The following three statements are equivalent:*

1.  $\hat{Q}$  maximizes  $l(Q; \mathbf{x}, f)$ .
2.  $\hat{Q}$  minimizes  $\sup_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} D_Q(\boldsymbol{\theta}; \mathbf{x}, f)$ .
3.  $\sup_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} D_{\hat{Q}}(\boldsymbol{\theta}; \mathbf{x}, f) = 0$ .

The intuition here is that  $D_Q(\theta; \mathbf{x}, f)$  measures the change in likelihood as we move a little bit of mass from each of the points of support of  $Q$  to a point at  $\theta$ . If a mixing distribution  $\hat{Q}$  maximizes the likelihood, then this change in likelihood should never be positive and if we are not at the maximizing distribution  $\hat{Q}$ , then there should be some  $\theta$  to which we can move some mass to increase the likelihood.

Also contained in [42, Theorem 4.1] was the following result concerning the locations of the support points of  $\hat{Q}$ . The statement here is taken from [44, Theorem 20].

**Theorem 6.6** ([44]). *The support of any maximum likelihood estimator  $\hat{Q}$  lies in the set*

$$\{\theta : D_{\hat{Q}}(\theta; \mathbf{x}, f) = 0\}. \quad (6.26)$$

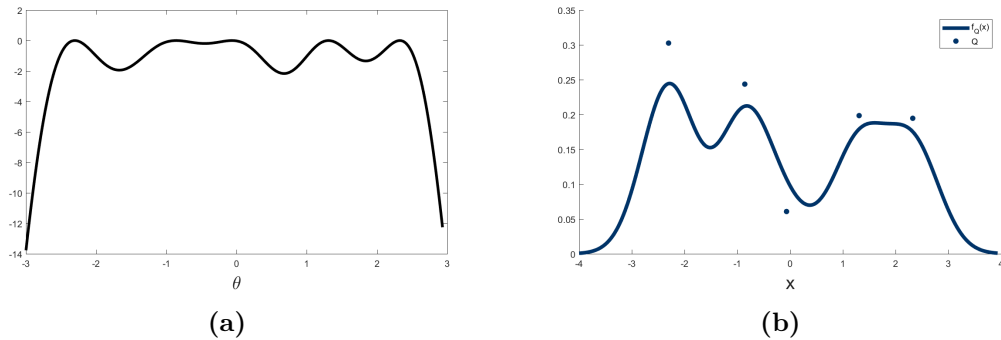
Theorems 6.5 and 6.6 indicate that each support point of  $\hat{Q}$  is a local maximum of  $D_{\hat{Q}}(\theta; \mathbf{x}, f)$ . So if  $f$  is parametrized by a single parameter  $\theta$  and  $D_Q(\theta; \mathbf{x}, f)$  is twice differentiable in  $\theta$ , then each support point  $\theta^*$  of the maximizing mixture distribution,  $\hat{Q}$ , satisfies

$$D_{\hat{Q}}(\theta^*; \mathbf{x}, f) = 0, \quad (6.27)$$

$$D'_{\hat{Q}}(\theta^*; \mathbf{x}, f) = 0, \quad (6.28)$$

$$D''_{\hat{Q}}(\theta^*; \mathbf{x}, f) \leq 0, \quad (6.29)$$

so long as  $\theta^*$  is not on the boundary of the parameter space. A typical example of this is shown in Figure 6.4. In this figure we observe that  $D_Q(\theta)$  has a local maximum at every point where  $Q$  places a probability mass. Since  $D_Q(\theta) \leq 0$  for all  $\theta \in \mathbb{R}$ , we know that  $Q$  is the maximum likelihood mixing distribution. In Section 6.2.5 we will show how to obtain equations (6.27) and (6.28) using a different method to Lindsay that does not involve the gradient function.



**Figure 6.4** – The gradient function,  $D_{\hat{Q}}$ , (a) and its associated mixing distribution,  $Q$ , and mixture,  $f_Q$ , (b). In this example  $f$  is normal with variance  $1/4$  and  $\mathbf{x}$  is made up of  $n = 50$  points distributed uniformly but randomly along  $[-3, 3]$ .

### 6.2.4.1 Support Hyperplane

There is a geometric interpretation to these theorems that ties in with the likelihood curve interpretation given above. For any given mixing distribution  $Q$ , define the *inverse likelihood vector*  $\lambda(Q; \mathbf{x}, f) = (1/f_Q(x_1), \dots, 1/f_Q(x_n))$  and the hyperplane

$$\mathcal{H}_Q = \{\mathbf{z} : \langle \lambda(Q; \mathbf{x}, f), \mathbf{z} \rangle = n\}, \quad (6.30)$$

which contains the usual likelihood vector,  $\gamma(Q; \mathbf{x}, f)$ . We may write the gradient function as

$$D(Q; \mathbf{x}, f) = \langle \lambda(Q; \mathbf{x}, f), \gamma(\boldsymbol{\theta}; \mathbf{x}, f) \rangle - n. \quad (6.31)$$

If  $\hat{Q}$  maximizes  $l(Q; \mathbf{x}, f)$  then by statement 3 of Theorem 6.5,

$$\langle \lambda(\hat{Q}; \mathbf{x}, f), \gamma(\boldsymbol{\theta}; \mathbf{x}, f) \rangle \leq n \quad (6.32)$$

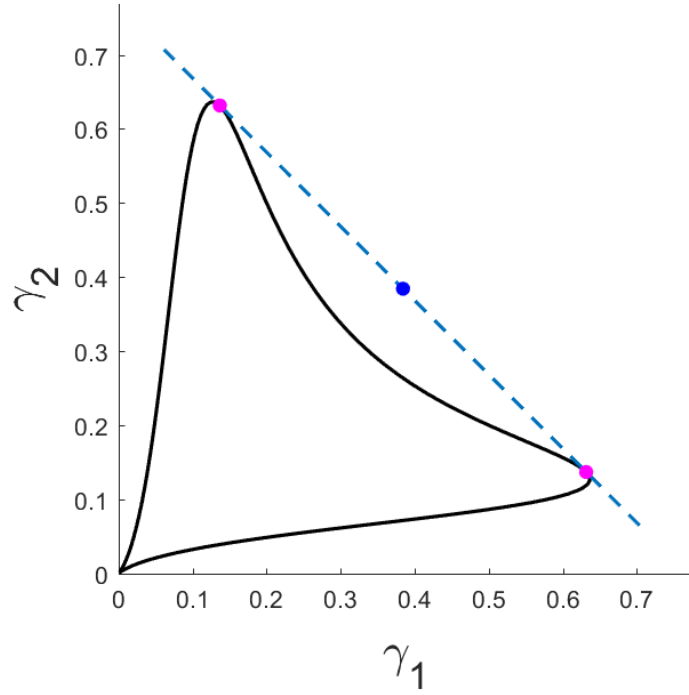
for all  $\boldsymbol{\theta} \in \Omega$ . This means that  $\mathcal{M} = \text{conv}(\Gamma_{\mathbf{x},f})$  lies entirely on one side of  $\mathcal{H}$  and Theorem 6.6 tell us that if  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$  is in the support of  $\hat{Q}$ , then

$$\langle \lambda(\hat{Q}; \mathbf{x}, f), \gamma(\boldsymbol{\theta}; \mathbf{x}, f) \rangle = n \quad (6.33)$$

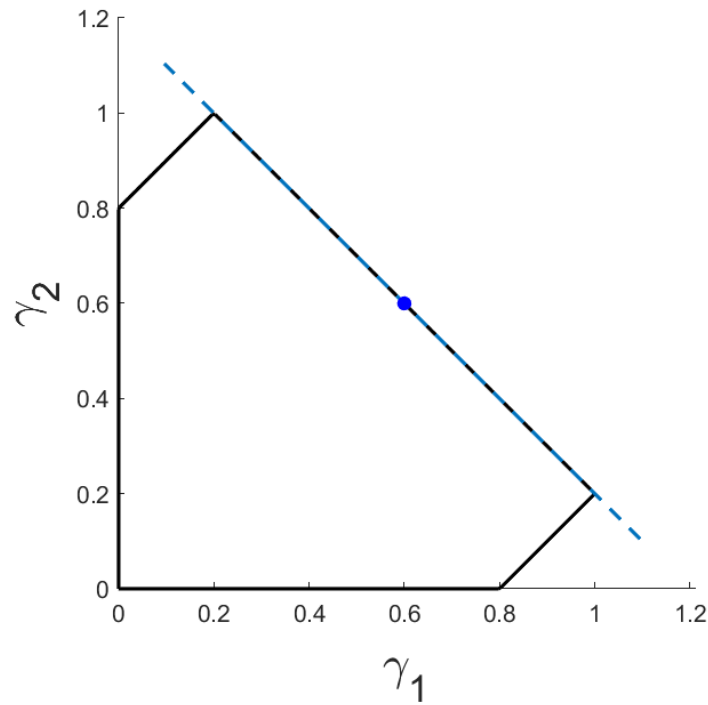
and so  $\gamma(\boldsymbol{\theta}; \mathbf{x}, f) \in \mathcal{H}$ . Thus we can gain information about the number of support points of  $\hat{Q}$  by finding the number of points at which  $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x},f}$  touches  $\mathcal{H}_{\hat{Q}}$ . As an example, consider Figure 6.5. Here we observe the likelihood curve for a Cauchy density and  $n = 2$  observations. The support line containing  $\hat{\gamma}$  has two points of contact with  $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x},f}$  which correspond to the two points of support of the maximum likelihood mixture  $\hat{Q}$ . In our experience it is fairly typical for every contact point of  $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x},f}$  with  $\mathcal{H}_{\hat{Q}}$  (or equivalently, every point in (6.26)) to correspond to a support point of  $\hat{Q}$ . However, this is not always the case. In Figure 6.6 we have shown the likelihood curve for a symmetric triangular density and  $n = 2$  observations. We observe that  $\mathcal{H}_{\hat{Q}}$  touches  $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x},f}$  at an infinite number of points along a line segment. The interpretation is that there are an infinite number of distinct mixtures which achieve the maximum likelihood, each with support points corresponding to various locations along that line segment.

### 6.2.5 KKT conditions

We will now point out that the gradient function conditions in (6.27) and (6.28) can be obtained using the Karush-Kuhn-Tucker (KKT) conditions [35] [32] for the following optimisation problem. Suppose that we restrict our mixture to have no more than  $m$  components. Then given a component density  $f$ , and data  $\mathbf{x}$ , the problem of finding



**Figure 6.5** – The likelihood curve,  $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x},f}$ , (solid line) along with the support hyperplane,  $\mathcal{H}_{\hat{Q}}$ , (dashed line) that contains  $\hat{\gamma}$  (blue point), and the points of contact with  $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x},f}$  (magenta points). In this example  $\mathbf{x} = (1, 2)$  and  $f$  is a Cauchy density with scale parameter  $1/2$ .



**Figure 6.6** – The likelihood curve,  $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x},f}$ , (solid line) along with the support hyperplane,  $\mathcal{H}_{\hat{Q}}$ , (dashed line) that contains  $\hat{\gamma}$  (blue point). In this example  $\mathbf{x} = (0, 0.4)$  and  $f$  is a symmetric triangular density with width  $1/2$ .



the maximum likelihood location mixture can be written as the following non-linear optimization problem.

Find  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$  and  $\mathbf{p}$  that maximize

$$l_m(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathbf{p}; \mathbf{x}) = \sum_{i=1}^n \log \left[ \sum_{j=1}^m p_j f(x_i - \theta_j) \right] \quad (6.34)$$

subject to

$$\theta_j - \theta_{j+1} \leq 0, \quad j = 1, \dots, m-1 \quad (6.35)$$

$$-p_j \leq 0, \quad j = 1, \dots, m \quad (6.36)$$

$$\sum_{j=1}^m p_j = 1. \quad (6.37)$$

Constraints (6.36) and (6.37) ensure that the mixture is valid. We also include (6.35) so that any mixture which can be written with fewer than  $m$  components appears on the boundary of the feasible space (we will either have some  $p_j = 0$  or some  $\theta_j = \theta_{j+1}$ ). Conversely, any point at which we have equality in any of the constraints in (6.35) or (6.36), can be written with fewer than  $m$  components. Hence, a necessary condition for  $K_{\mathbf{x}} = m$  is that any maximizing point of (6.34) must also satisfy strict inequalities in (6.35) and (6.36).

Introduce Lagrange multipliers  $\lambda$ ,  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$ ,  $\boldsymbol{\nu}$  and form the Lagrangian

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathbf{p}, \lambda, \boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\nu}) = l_m(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathbf{p}; \mathbf{x}) - \lambda \left( 1 - \sum_{j=1}^m p_j \right) - \sum_{j=1}^m \mu_j p_j + \sum_{j=1}^{m-1} \nu_j (\theta_j - \theta_{j+1}). \quad (6.38)$$

The KKT conditions tell us that at a local maximum the equations

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta_1} l_m(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathbf{p}; \mathbf{x}) = \nu_1 \quad (6.39)$$

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta_j} l_m(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathbf{p}; \mathbf{x}) = \nu_j - \nu_{j-1}, \quad j = 2, \dots, m-1 \quad (6.40)$$

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta_m} l_m(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathbf{p}; \mathbf{x}) = -\nu_{m-1} \quad (6.41)$$

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial p_j} l_m(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathbf{p}; \mathbf{x}) = \lambda - \mu_j \quad j = 1, \dots, m. \quad (6.42)$$

must be satisfied along with the constraints in (6.35), (6.36), (6.37), and the additional constraints

$$\boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\nu} \geq 0, \quad (6.43)$$

$$\mu_j p_j = 0, \quad j = 1, \dots, m \quad (6.44)$$

$$\nu_j(\theta_j - \theta_{j+1}) = 0, \quad j = 1, \dots, m-1. \quad (6.45)$$

Multiplying both sides of (6.42) by  $p_j$  (recall (6.44)) and summing over  $j$  we get that

$$\lambda = \sum_{j=1}^m p_j \frac{\partial}{\partial p_j} l_m(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathbf{p}; \mathbf{x}). \quad (6.46)$$

From (6.34),

$$\lambda = \sum_{j=1}^m p_j \frac{\partial}{\partial p_j} \left( \sum_{i=1}^n \log \left[ \sum_{k=1}^m p_k f(x_i - \theta_k) \right] \right) \quad (6.47)$$

$$= \sum_{j=1}^m p_j \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{f(x_i - \theta_j)}{\sum_{k=1}^m p_k f(x_i - \theta_k)} \quad (6.48)$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^m \frac{p_j f(x_i - \theta_j)}{\sum_{k=1}^m p_k f(x_i - \theta_k)} \quad (6.49)$$

$$= n. \quad (6.50)$$

If we additionally require that the solution uses all  $m$  components, then we must have that  $p_j > 0$ , and  $\theta_j - \theta_{j+1} < 0$  for all  $j$ . Constraints (6.44) and (6.45) then require  $\mu_j = 0$  and  $\nu_j = 0$  for all  $j$ . This gives us necessary conditions for  $\hat{Q} = (\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathbf{p})$  to be an  $m$  point maximizing mixture,

$$-n + \frac{\partial}{\partial p_j} l_m(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathbf{p}; \mathbf{x}) = 0, \quad j = 1, \dots, m \quad (6.51)$$

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta_j} l_m(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathbf{p}; \mathbf{x}) = 0, \quad j = 1, \dots, m. \quad (6.52)$$

Substituting in  $l_m$  from (6.34) we obtain

$$-n + \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{f(x_i - \theta_j)}{f_{\hat{Q}}(x_i)} = D_{\hat{Q}}(\theta_j; \mathbf{x}, f) = 0 \quad j = 1, \dots, m \quad (6.53)$$

$$\sum_{i=1}^n \frac{-p_j f'(x_i - \theta_j)}{f_{\hat{Q}}(x_i)} = p_j D'_{\hat{Q}}(\theta_j; \mathbf{x}, f) = 0 \quad j = 1, \dots, m \quad (6.54)$$

which are equivalent to (6.27) and (6.28) respectively.

[KEEP THIS SECOND ORDER STUFF IN?]

The second order conditions are slightly more complex. In the context of our problem they state [5, Proposition 3.3.1] that a necessary condition for the point  $(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathbf{p}, \lambda, \boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\nu})$  to be a local maximum is that,

$$\mathbf{y}' \nabla_{\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathbf{p}}^2 \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathbf{p}, \lambda, \boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\nu}) \mathbf{y} \leq 0 \quad (6.55)$$

for all  $\mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^{2m}$  such that

$$\nabla h(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathbf{p})' \mathbf{y} = 0. \quad (6.56)$$

where

$$h(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathbf{p}) = 1 - \sum_{j=1}^m p_j. \quad (6.57)$$

Since

$$\nabla h(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathbf{p}) = (0, \dots, 0, -1, \dots, -1), \quad (6.58)$$

equation (6.55) must be satisfied in particular for  $\mathbf{y}$  with components  $y_k = 1$  for some  $k \leq m$  and  $y_i = 0$  for all  $i \neq k$ . This gives us that necessary conditions for  $\hat{Q}$  to be an  $m$  point maximum are that

$$\frac{\partial^2}{\partial \theta_j^2} \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathbf{p}, \lambda, \boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\nu}) \leq 0, \quad j = 1, \dots, m. \quad (6.59)$$

Recalling (6.38) and (6.34), we get that

$$\frac{\partial^2}{\partial \theta_j^2} \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathbf{p}, \lambda, \boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\nu}) = \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{p_j f''(x_i - \theta_j)}{\sum_{k=1}^m p_k f(x_i - \theta_k)} - \sum_{i=1}^n \left( \frac{p_j f'(x_i - \theta_j)}{\sum_{k=1}^m p_k f(x_i - \theta_k)} \right)^2 \quad (6.60)$$

$$= p_j D_Q''(\theta_j; \mathbf{x}, f) - \sum_{i=1}^n \left( \frac{p_j f'(x_i - \theta_j)}{\sum_{k=1}^m p_k f(x_i - \theta_k)} \right)^2 \quad (6.61)$$

$$\leq 0. \quad (6.62)$$

This is a weaker condition than that in (6.29). We were unable to obtain an equivalent condition to (6.29) using the above method.

### 6.2.6 Additional results on $K_{\mathbf{x}}$

Theorem 6.2 bounds  $K_{\mathbf{x}}$  by  $n$ . To get tighter bounds on  $K_{\mathbf{x}}$ , we must make some assumptions about the form of the component densities, or the structure of  $\mathbf{x}$ .

In [43], Lindsay looked at the special case of component densities in the exponential family. He related the behaviour of certain polynomials to the location of the support

points of the maximizing mixture. A consequence of this was a sufficient condition for the maximizing mixture to have exactly one point of support. We restate part of this theorem here.

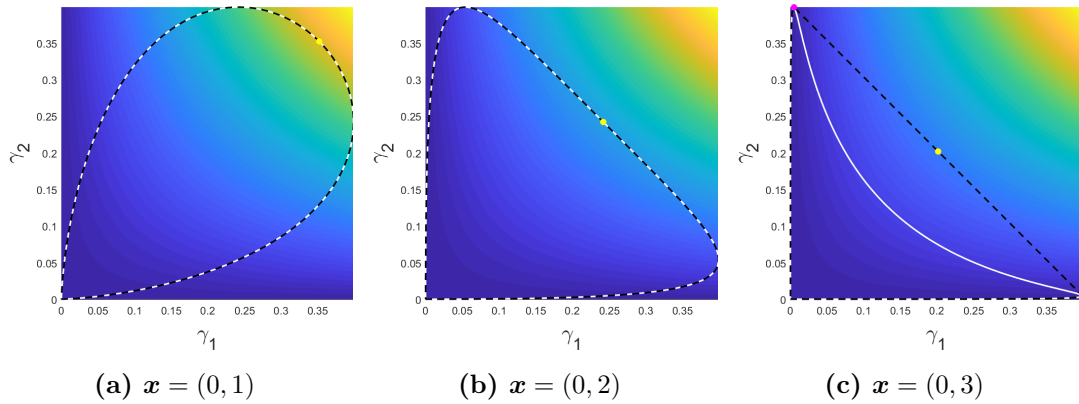
**Theorem 6.7** (Theorem 4.1, [43]). *Let  $f_\theta$  belong to the exponential class of densities and be parametrized by its mean value  $\theta$ . Let  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_n)$ ,  $x_1 \leq \dots \leq x_n$ , be the sample for which we are finding the maximum likelihood mixture of  $f_\theta$ . Define the function*

$$M(\theta) = (x_1 - \theta)(x_n - \theta) + \text{Var}_\theta(X). \quad (6.63)$$

*If  $M(\theta)$  is strictly positive on  $[x_1, x_n]$ , then the maximum likelihood mixing distribution,  $\hat{Q}$ , has exactly one point of support located at  $\theta = \bar{x}$ .*

The above is a sufficient condition for  $K_{\mathbf{x}} = 1$ . However, Lindsay also showed that in the case of two observations ( $n = 2$ ), one could easily visualise the likelihood curve for a location mixture of normals and observe that the above sufficient condition also seems to be necessary for a normal density.

We illustrate this in Figure 6.7 by giving some examples of  $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x}}$  for  $n = 2$  using a normal component density with variance  $\sigma^2 = 1$ . In particular, we note that the distance



**Figure 6.7** – The curve  $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x}}$  for three different  $\mathbf{x}$  along with the boundary of  $\text{conv}(\Gamma_{\mathbf{x}})$  for a normal component density with unit variance. The objective function,  $\mathcal{L}(\gamma)$ , is represented as a heat map. The optimal point  $\hat{\gamma}$  is shown in yellow, and where applicable, the points  $\gamma(\theta_j)$  that make up  $\hat{\gamma}$  are shown in magenta.

between  $x_1$  and  $x_2$  has a strong effect on the shape of  $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x}}$ . In Figure 6.7a, the points are distance 1 apart and  $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x}}$  is the boundary of  $\text{conv}(\Gamma_{\mathbf{x}})$ . In this case, it is clear that  $K_{\mathbf{x}} = 1$ . In Figure 6.7c, the points are distance 3 apart and the optimal point no longer lies on  $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x}}$ . This results in the maximum likelihood mixing distribution needing two points of support and so  $K_{\mathbf{x}} = 2$ . The boundary case, where  $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x}}$  goes from being a convex curve to having the indentation shown in Figure 6.7c, is shown in Figure 6.7b. This corresponds to the maximum separation the two points can have while keeping  $M(\theta)$  non-negative on  $[x_1, x_n]$ .

Lindsay stated that "these results were very difficult to obtain in higher dimensions, and hard to generalize outside the exponential family" [44]. Some generalizations to the results in [43] were presented in [45]. This paper gave improved bounds on  $K_{\mathbf{x}}$  for discrete component densities.

In Section 6.4 we will present a necessary and sufficient condition for  $K_{\mathbf{x}} = 1$  in the case of two observations for a certain class of densities that include the normal density, as well as other densities outside the exponential family. We will also present a necessary condition for  $K_{\mathbf{x}} = m$ ,  $m = 1, \dots, n$ , for normal densities in the case of  $n$  observations.

### 6.3 Empirical Results

In this section we explore  $K_{\mathbf{x}}$  through empirical results and figures. Throughout this section, and for the remainder of this chapter, we will consider only location mixtures (see (6.3)). All component densities will be unimodal, with a mode at  $x = 0$ . We list in Table 6.1 the component densities that we will use.

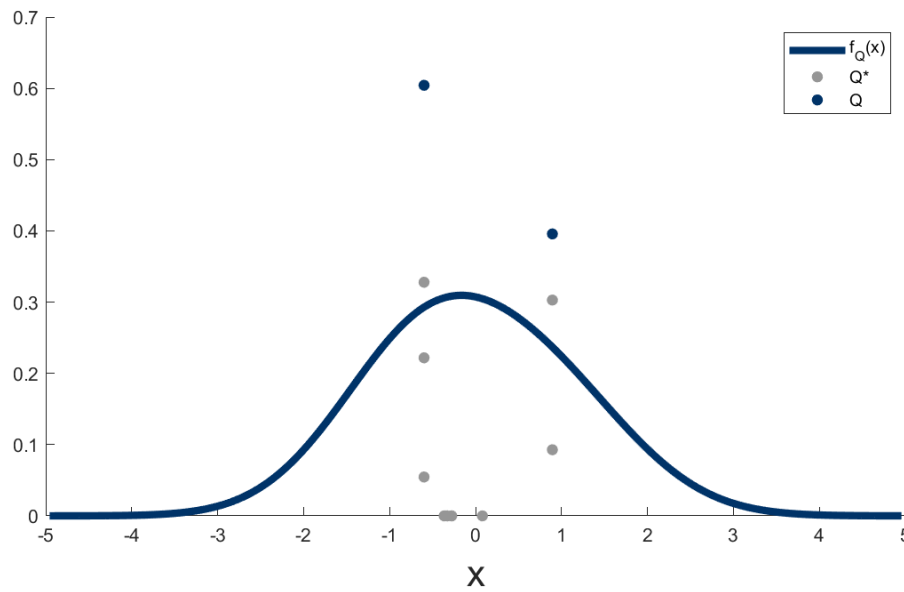
Density	$f(x) =$
normal with fixed variance $\sigma^2$	$\frac{1}{\sigma\sqrt{2\pi}} \exp\left(-\frac{x^2}{2\sigma^2}\right)$
Cauchy with fixed scale $\gamma$	$\frac{1}{\pi\gamma + \pi x^2/\gamma}$

**Table 6.1** – List of component densities we consider.

#### 6.3.1 Method

There are two parts to determining  $K_{\mathbf{x}}$  empirically. The first part is to find the maximum likelihood mixture,  $\hat{Q}$ , or at least a good approximation  $Q^*$ . Given  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , we use a general purpose nonlinear programming solver (the MATLAB function *fmincon*) to find the maximum likelihood mixture. We can test that we have indeed reached the global maximum through the use of the derivative function conditions given in Theorem 6.5. If the mixture that is returned by our general solver does not satisfy these conditions then we may use another method, such as the vertex direction method (VDM) or the vertex exchange method (VEM), which is guaranteed to converge to the global maximum but converges slowly (see [7] for a review of different methods). We note that the actual method used is not important so long as the final result satisfies the derivative conditions. In practice, when  $n$  is small, a general purpose solver is sufficient, fast, and simple to implement, and we rarely need to use a secondary method.

The second part is to determine the number of points of support of  $Q^*$ . We initiate our general purpose solver with a mixture distribution that has more points of support

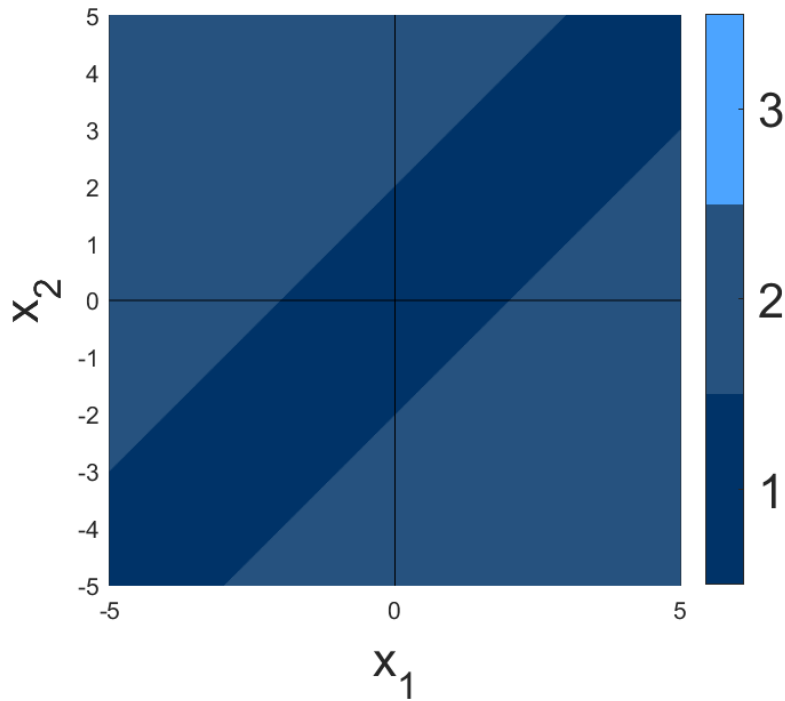


**Figure 6.8** – The unsimplified mixing distribution  $Q^*$  that results from using more points of support than required when finding our maximizing mixture, as well as the equivalent simplified distribution,  $Q$ , and the resulting mixture density,  $f_Q(x)$ . Each probability mass with support  $\theta$  and weight  $p$  is represented by a point at  $(\theta, p)$ . In this example  $\mathbf{x}$  is made up of  $n = 50$  independent points distributed uniformly but randomly on the interval  $[-2, -2]$ , and  $f$  is normal with unit variance.

than is needed. Under the optimization, this collapses down to the distribution  $Q^*$  which may assign zero weight to some masses, and may concentrate multiple masses on the one point of support. We may simplify such a distribution by removing all masses with zero weight, and by combining all masses which share a point of support into one mass which takes the combined weight of the constituent masses (see Figure 6.8). A naive approach would be to take the number of probability masses in this simplified distribution as the value for  $K_{\mathbf{x}}$ .

However, there are some problems with this approach. In practice, we do not remove masses with exactly zero weight, but rather remove masses with weight  $p_j < \epsilon$  for some small  $\epsilon > 0$ . Similarly, we merge masses  $i$  and  $j$  with support  $|\theta_j - \theta_i| < \delta$  for some small  $\delta > 0$ . It may be that the true maximum likelihood mixture does contain components that have either very small weight, or are located very close to other masses. In this scenario, we would produce a value for  $K_{\mathbf{x}}$  that is too small.

Instead, we propose the following. From Theorem 6.6, each point of support,  $\hat{\theta}_j$  of the maximizing mixture distribution  $\hat{Q}$  is a local maximum of  $D_{\hat{Q}}(\theta; \mathbf{x}, f)$  with  $D_{\hat{Q}}(\theta_j; \mathbf{x}, f) = 0$ . So, given the mixing distribution  $Q^*$  that results from our optimization, we take  $K_{\mathbf{x}}$  to be the number of local maxima in  $D_{Q^*}(\theta; \mathbf{x}, f)$  that take maximum value close to 0. Note that  $D_{\hat{Q}}(\theta_j; \mathbf{x}, f) = 0$  does not guarantee that  $\theta_j$  is a support point of  $\hat{Q}$  and so it is possible that this method produces a value for  $K_{\mathbf{x}}$  that is too large. However, apart



**Figure 6.9** –  $K_{\mathbf{x}}$  as a function of  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, x_2)$ , for a normal component density with fixed variance  $\sigma^2 = 1$ .

from some deliberately constructed scenarios, in our experience  $D_{\hat{Q}}(\theta; \mathbf{x}, f)$  is typically zero only at the support points of  $\hat{Q}$ .

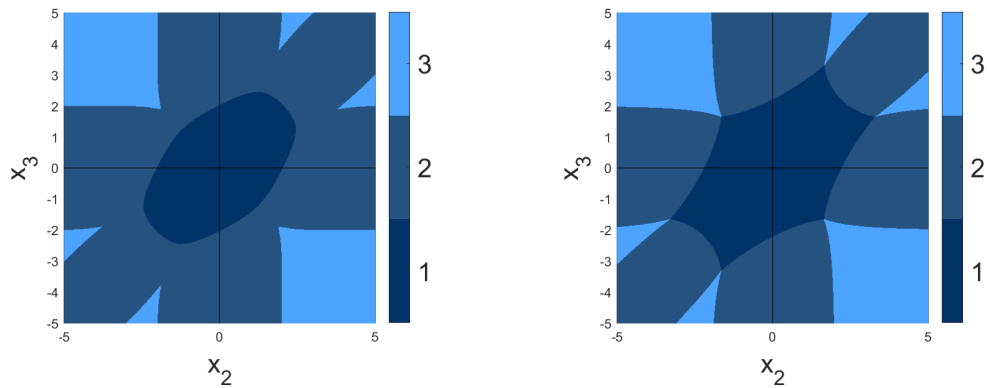
### 6.3.2 Flag graphs

When  $n$  is very small, we can plot  $K_{\mathbf{x}}$  as a function of  $\mathbf{x}$ . For example, we may take  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, x_2)$  across a grid of values and colour each point  $\mathbf{x}$  according to the value of  $K_{\mathbf{x}}$ . We have done this in Figure 6.9 for a normal component density with fixed variance  $\sigma^2 = 1$ . We observe a band in which  $K_{\mathbf{x}} = 1$  and outside of which  $K_{\mathbf{x}} = 2$ .

However, there is some redundancy in this plot which arises because we are using location mixtures. When using a location mixture, if the maximizing mixing distribution for  $\mathbf{x}$  places weights  $p_j$  at locations  $\theta_j$ , then a maximizing mixing distribution for  $\mathbf{x} + (c, \dots, c)$  for some constant  $c \in \mathbb{R}$  is simply the distribution that places weights  $p_j$  at locations  $\theta_j + c$ . That is, shifting  $\mathbf{x}$  by  $c$  results in the maximizing mixture also shifting by  $c$ . A consequence of this fact is that  $K_{\mathbf{x}}$  is invariant under translations of the form  $\mathbf{x} \mapsto \mathbf{x} + (c, \dots, c)$ .

This suggests increasing  $n$  to 3, and fixing one of the  $x_i$  while letting the other two vary. We do this by taking  $\mathbf{x} = (0, x_2, x_3)$  with  $x_2$  and  $x_3$  varying across an evenly spaced

grid. We do this for both a normal component density with variance  $\sigma^2 = 1$  (Figure 6.10a) and a Cauchy density with scale  $\gamma = \sqrt{3}$  (Figure 6.10b). We have chosen the scale of the Cauchy distribution so that it has inflection points in the same places as the normal density, namely at  $x = \pm 1$ . This decision is made in light of Theorem 6.8 which says that for  $n = 2$  and for certain component densities  $f$ ,  $K_{\mathbf{x}}$  can be determined by comparing  $|x_1 - x_2|$  and the distance between the inflection points of  $f$ . It seems reasonable to expect that the choice of scale that makes the  $n = 2$  figures identical is a good choice for comparing the effects of choosing different component densities in the  $n = 3$  case.



(a) Normal component density with fixed variance  $\sigma^2 = 1$ . (b) Cauchy component density with fixed scale  $\gamma = \sqrt{3}$ .

**Figure 6.10** –  $K_{\mathbf{x}}$  as a function of  $\mathbf{x} = (0, x_2, x_3)$  for two different component densities.

While  $n = 2, 3$  is not a very realistic scenario when it comes to real data to which we may wish to fit a mixture model, it does help demonstrate a particular way of thinking about the problem of determining  $K_{\mathbf{x}}$ . That is, that  $K_{\mathbf{x}}$  is simply a function of where  $\mathbf{x}$  lies in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . For a particular choice of component density, we can partition  $\mathbb{R}^n$  into sets

$$C_k = \{\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n | K_{\mathbf{x}} = k\}, \quad k = 1, \dots, n. \quad (6.64)$$

The problem of determining  $K_{\mathbf{x}}$  is then the same as determining in which of the sets  $C_k$   $\mathbf{x}$  lies. If  $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{X}$  is randomly chosen, then the probability that  $K_{\mathbf{X}} = k$  is simply the probability that  $\mathbf{X} \in C_k$ . In Section 6.4, we present various results which bound the regions  $C_k$  in various settings.

We have attempted to compare the sizes of shapes of the sets  $C_k$  for  $n = 2$  for the normal and Cauchy densities in Figure 6.11. In this figure we have plotted  $(K_{\mathbf{x}}^{\text{norm}} + K_{\mathbf{x}}^{\text{Cauchy}})/2$  to create the effect of overlaying Figures 6.10a and 6.10b (we suggest using these figures as reference to aid readability). We observe in this example that although  $C_1^{\text{norm}} \subset C_1^{\text{Cauchy}}$ ,  $C_2^{\text{norm}}$  contains points outside of  $C_2^{\text{Cauchy}}$ .



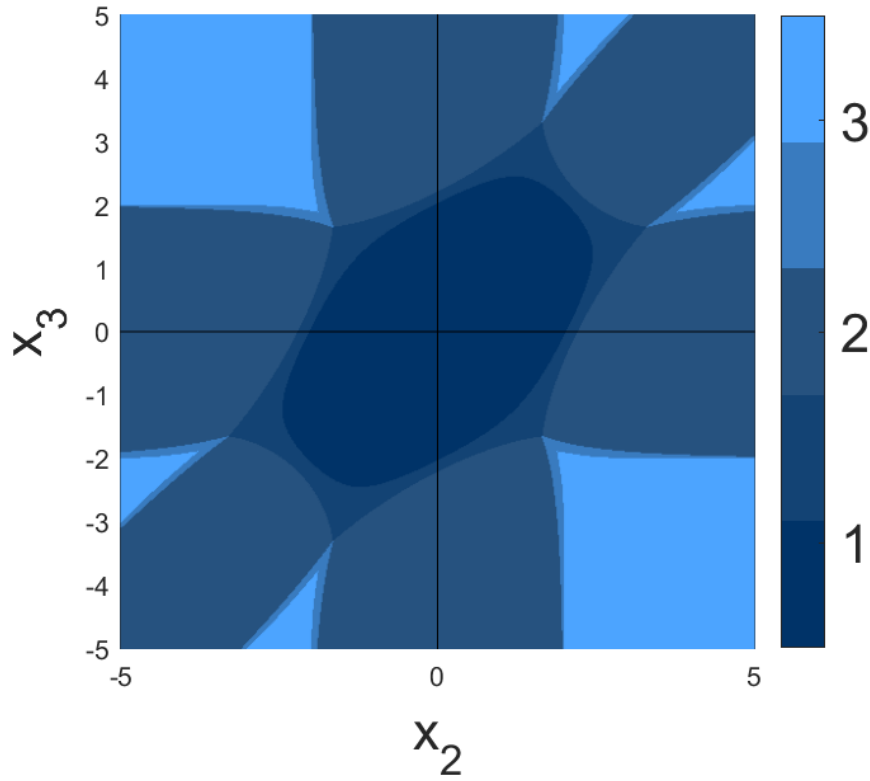


Figure 6.11 –  $(K_{\mathbf{x}}^{\text{norm}} + K_{\mathbf{x}}^{\text{Cauchy}})/2$

## 6.4 Results

The figures obtained in Section 6.3, as well as the examples in Figures 6.1 and 6.8, suggest that the bounds on  $K_{\mathbf{x}}$  from Section 6.2 could be significantly tightened for location mixtures. The main bounds that we have discussed so far are Theorem 6.2 which states that under mild conditions,  $K_{\mathbf{x}} \leq n$ ; and Theorem 6.7 which provides a sufficient condition for  $K_{\mathbf{x}} = 1$  for component densities in the exponential class of densities. In this section we will present new bounds on  $K_{\mathbf{x}}$  that either tighten these bounds, or extend them to different classes of component densities.

### 6.4.1 Results for $n = 2$

The first bound we present is Theorem 6.8 which extends Theorem 6.7 to a different class of component densities in the case that  $n = 2$ , and which tightens the result to be both sufficient and necessary on this class. The theorem concerns component densities,  $f(x)$ , which satisfy the assumptions,

A1 (Continuity). The density  $f(x)$  is continuous and is supported on the whole real line.

A2 (Differentiability). The first and second derivatives of  $f(x)$  exist and are continuous.

A3 (Unimodality). The density  $f(x)$  has a single mode at  $x = 0$ . That is,  $f'(x) > 0$  for  $x < 0$ ,  $f'(0) = 0$ , and  $f'(x) < 0$  for  $x > 0$ .

A4 (Symmetry). The density  $f(x)$  is symmetric about  $x = 0$ .

A5. The density  $f(x)$  has only two points of inflection, located at  $x = \pm a$ .

A6. The density  $f(x)$  satisfies  $f'(x) < -f'(x - 2a)$  for  $x \in (a, \infty)$ .

**Theorem 6.8.** *Let  $f(x)$  satisfy assumptions A1 through to A6. Let  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, x_2)$  be the sample for which we are finding a maximum likelihood location mixture using  $f$  as the component density. Then*

$$K_{\mathbf{x}} = K(\mathbf{x}; f) = \begin{cases} 1, & |x_2 - x_1| \leq 2a, \\ 2, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (6.65)$$

The proof of Theorem 6.8 will be given in Section 6.4.2 after some discussion concerning how the likelihood curve behaves when  $n = 2$ .

It is worth verifying that Assumptions A1 through to A6 are satisfied by some common densities. In particular they are satisfied by the common unimodal densities in Table 6.1,

$$f_{\text{norm}}(x) = \frac{1}{\sigma\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-x^2/(2\sigma^2)}, \quad (6.66)$$

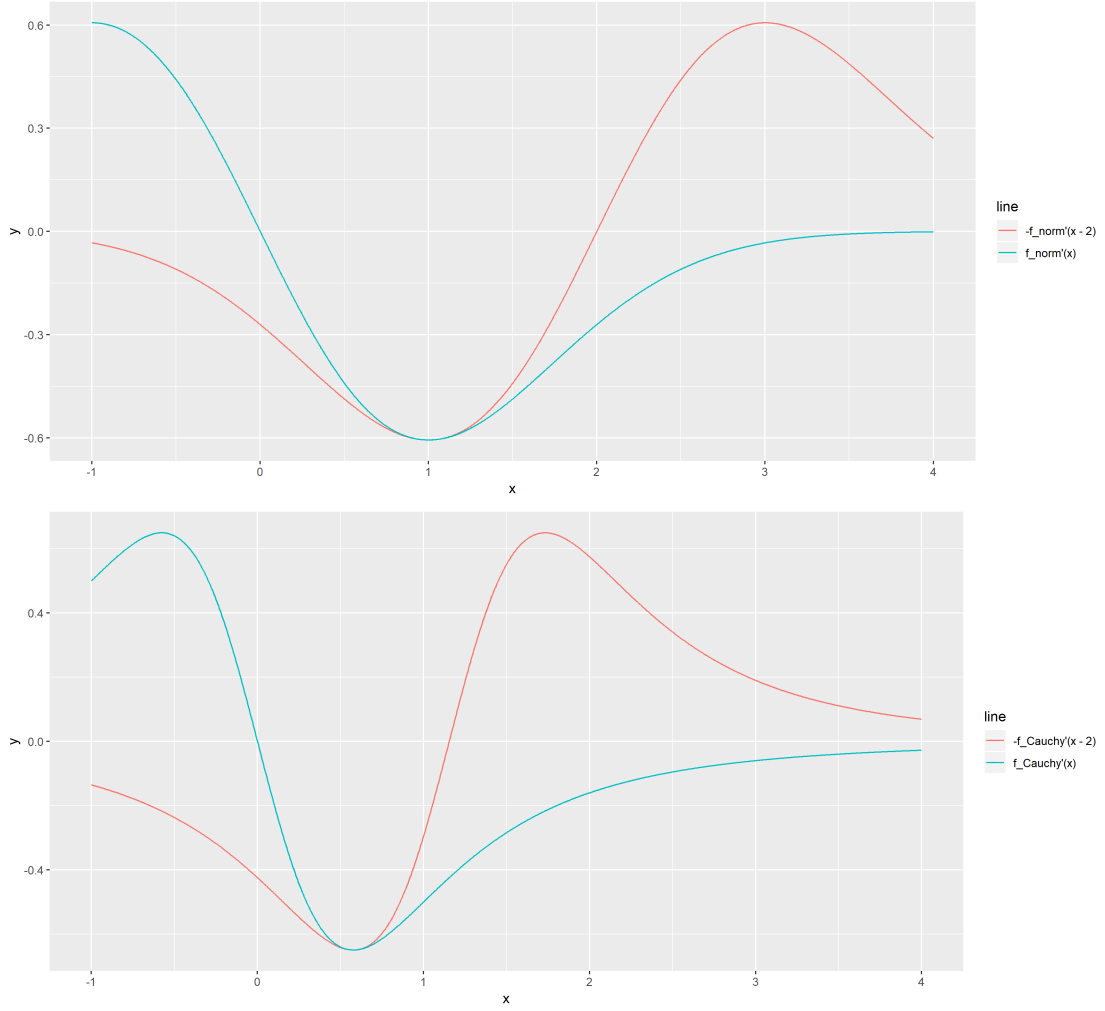
$$f_{\text{Cauchy}}(x) = \frac{1}{\pi(\gamma + x^2/\gamma)}. \quad (6.67)$$

Clearly, Assumptions A1 through to A4 are satisfied for both  $f_{\text{norm}}(x)$  and  $f_{\text{Cauchy}}(x)$ . The inflection points of  $f_{\text{norm}}(x)$  are located at  $x = \pm\sigma$  and the inflection points of  $f_{\text{Cauchy}}(x)$  are located at  $x = \pm\gamma/\sqrt{3}$ , satisfying Assumption A5. A plot of  $f'_{\text{norm}}(x)$  against  $-f'_{\text{norm}}(x - 2\sigma)$  and of  $f'_{\text{Cauchy}}(x)$  against  $-f'_{\text{Cauchy}}(x - 2\gamma/\sqrt{3})$  in Figure 6.12 makes it clear that Assumption A6 is satisfied too. Of course, one could make this rigorous if desired.

### 6.4.2 Proof of Theorem 6.8

The proof of Theorem 6.8 is based on the discussion contained in [43, Section 4], in which Lindsay discussed how the curvature of  $\Gamma$  relates to the support points of  $\hat{Q}$ . The important realisation we use here is that points of support must correspond to regions of non-negative curvature of  $\Gamma$ .

*Proof.* If  $x_1 = x_2$  then clearly  $K_{\mathbf{x}} = 1$ . Otherwise, without loss of generality, assume  $x_1 < x_2$ . By the unimodality of  $f$  (A3), the points of support of any maximizing mixing



**Figure 6.12** – Plots of  $f'_{\text{norm}}(x)$  against  $-f'_{\text{norm}}(x-2\sigma)$  and  $f'_{\text{Cauchy}}(x)$  against  $-f'_{\text{Cauchy}}(x-2\gamma/\sqrt{3})$  for  $\sigma = 1$  and  $\gamma = 1$ .

distribution,  $\hat{Q}$ , must lie between  $x_1$  and  $x_2$  [44, Proposition 25]. Hence  $\hat{\gamma} = \gamma(\hat{Q}, \mathbf{x}, f)$  must lie in the convex hull of  $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x}, f}^* = \{\gamma(\theta; \mathbf{x}, f) : \theta \in [x_1, x_2]\}$ .

Consider the behaviour of  $\gamma(\theta; \mathbf{x}, f) = (f(x_1 - \theta), f(x_2 - \theta))$  as we increase  $\theta$  from  $x_1$  to  $x_2$ . Since  $f(x)$  has a single mode at  $x = 0$ ,  $f(x_1 - \theta)$  is non-increasing and  $f(x_2 - \theta)$  is non-decreasing along this interval. So  $\gamma(\theta; \mathbf{x}, f)$  crosses the line  $\gamma_1 = \gamma_2$  once only and by the symmetry of  $f(x)$ , this occurs at  $\theta = (x_1 + x_2)/2$ . By Lemma 6.9, we also know that  $\hat{\gamma}$  must lie on the line  $\gamma_1 = \gamma_2$ .

Since  $f$  is continuous and twice differentiable,  $\gamma$  traces out a continuous, smooth curve. The signed curvature

$$k(\theta) = \frac{-f'(x_1 - \theta)f''(x_2 - \theta) + f'(x_2 - \theta)f''(x_1 - \theta)}{(f'(x_1 - \theta)^2 + f'(x_2 - \theta)^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}} \quad (6.68)$$

is defined everywhere since  $f'(x)$  is zero only at  $x = 0$  and so for  $x_1 \neq x_2$ , the denominator is non-zero everywhere. The sign of  $k(\theta)$  matches the sign of

$$S(\theta) = \begin{vmatrix} \gamma'_1(\theta; \mathbf{x}) & \gamma''_1(\theta; \mathbf{x}) \\ \gamma'_2(\theta; \mathbf{x}) & \gamma''_2(\theta; \mathbf{x}) \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} -f'(x_1 - \theta) & f''(x_1 - \theta) \\ -f'(x_2 - \theta) & f''(x_2 - \theta) \end{vmatrix}. \quad (6.69)$$

Recall from Section 6.2.4.1, that each point of support of a maximizing mixture  $\hat{Q}$ , corresponds with a contact point of  $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x},f}$  with the support hyperplane of  $\text{conv}(\Gamma_{\mathbf{x},f})$  that contains  $\hat{\gamma}$ . Note that any point  $\gamma(\theta_j; \mathbf{x}, f)$  that is in contact with a support hyperplane of  $\text{conv}(\Gamma_{\mathbf{x},f})$  must have non-negative curvature.

First, let us assume that  $x_2 - x_1 > 2a$ . By the symmetry of  $f$ ,  $\gamma(\theta; \mathbf{x})$  crosses the  $u_1 = u_2$  line at  $\theta = (x_1 + x_2)/2$ . At this point, the curvature of  $\gamma$  has the same sign as

$$S\left(\frac{x_1 + x_2}{2}\right) = \begin{vmatrix} -f'(\frac{x_1 - x_2}{2}) & f''(\frac{x_1 - x_2}{2}) \\ -f'(\frac{x_2 - x_1}{2}) & f''(\frac{x_2 - x_1}{2}) \end{vmatrix}. \quad (6.70)$$

Since  $x_2 - x_1 > 2a$ , by A5,  $f''((x_2 - x_1)/2) > 0$ . Similarly,  $f''((x_1 - x_2)/2) > 0$ . We also have that  $-f'((x_1 - x_2)/2) < 0$  and  $-f'((x_2 - x_1)/2) > 0$ . Hence  $S((x_1 + x_2)/2) < 0$  and so  $\gamma((x_1 + x_2)/2; \mathbf{x})$  has negative curvature. Since  $\gamma$  has negative curvature when it crosses the line  $\gamma_1 = \gamma_2$ , and since  $\hat{\gamma}$  lies on that line, the maximizing point  $\hat{\gamma}$  must be the convex combination of at least two separate points in  $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x},f}$  and so  $K_{\mathbf{x}} = 2$ .

Now assume that  $x_2 - x_1 \leq 2a$ . By Lemma 6.10, there is only one point at which  $\gamma$  is pointing along the direction  $(1, -1)$ . Now, by the symmetry of  $f$ ,  $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x},f}$  must have a line of symmetry along  $\gamma_1 = \gamma_2$ . Since  $\hat{\gamma}$  lies on the line  $\gamma_1 = \gamma_2$  by Lemma 6.9, the support line of  $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x},f}$  that contains  $\hat{\gamma}$  must point along the direction  $(1, -1)$ . Each contact point of  $\Gamma_{\mathbf{x},f}$  with one of its support lines must be tangent to that support line. Hence, there is only one possible point of contact with the support line that contains  $\hat{\gamma}$  and so  $K_{\mathbf{x}} = 1$ .

□

**Lemma 6.9.** *Let  $f(x)$  be a component density symmetric around  $x = 0$ , and  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, x_2) \in \mathbb{R}^2$  such that the conditions of Theorem 6.1 are met. Let  $\hat{Q}$  maximise the likelihood,  $l(Q; \mathbf{x}, f)$ . Then  $f_{\hat{Q}}(x_1) = f_{\hat{Q}}(x_2)$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $(u, v)$  denote the coordinates of  $\hat{\gamma} = (f_{\hat{Q}}(x_1), f_{\hat{Q}}(x_2))$ . By Theorem 6.2 we have

$$(u, v) = p\gamma(\theta_1; \mathbf{x}, f) + (1 - p)\gamma(\theta_2; \mathbf{x}, f) \quad (6.71)$$

$$= p(f(x_1 - \theta_1), f(x_2 - \theta_1)) + (1 - p)(f(x_1 - \theta_2), f(x_2 - \theta_2)) \quad (6.72)$$

for some choice of  $p \in (0, 1]$ , and  $\theta_1, \theta_2 \in \mathbb{R}$ . By the symmetry of  $f(x)$ ,  $f(x) = f(-x)$  and so

$$u = pf(x_1 - \theta_1) + (1 - p)f(x_1 - \theta_2) \quad (6.73)$$

$$= pf(\theta_1 - x_1) + (1 - p)f(\theta_2 - x_1) \quad (6.74)$$

$$= pf(x_2 - [x_1 + x_2 - \theta_1]) + (1 - p)f(x_2 - [x_1 + x_2 - \theta_2]) \quad (6.75)$$

and likewise

$$v = pf(x_1 - [x_1 + x_2 - \theta_1]) + (1 - p)f(x_1 - [x_1 + x_2 - \theta_2]). \quad (6.76)$$

Hence the point  $(v, u)$  can be written as

$$(v, u) = p\gamma(x_1 + x_2 - \theta_1; \mathbf{x}, f) + (1 - p)\gamma(x_1 + x_2 - \theta_2; \mathbf{x}, f), \quad (6.77)$$

and so  $(v, u) \in \text{conv}(\Gamma_{\mathbf{x}, f})$ . Since both  $(u, v), (v, u) \in \text{conv}(\Gamma_{\mathbf{x}, f})$ , we must have that  $\frac{1}{2}(u + v, u + v) \in \text{conv}(\Gamma_{\mathbf{x}, f})$ . Now

$$\mathcal{L}\left(\frac{1}{2}(u + v, u + v)\right) = 2 \ln((u + v)/2) \quad (6.78)$$

$$= \ln\left(\left(\frac{u + v}{2}\right)^2\right) \quad (6.79)$$

$$\geq \ln(uv) \quad (6.80)$$

$$= \mathcal{L}(u, v). \quad (6.81)$$

However,  $(u, v) = \hat{\gamma}$ , which by Theorem 6.1 is the unique maximizing point of  $\mathcal{L}$  in  $\text{conv}(\Gamma_{\mathbf{x}, f})$ . Hence  $(u, v) = \frac{1}{2}(u + v, u + v)$  and so  $u = v$ .  $\square$

**Lemma 6.10.** *Let  $f(x)$  be a density which satisfies assumptions A1 through to A6 and whose inflection points are at  $x = a$  and  $x = -a$ . If  $x_2 - x_1 < 2a$  ( $x_2 > x_1$ ) then the equation*

$$-f'(x_1 - \theta) = f'(x_2 - \theta) \quad (6.82)$$

*has only one solution.*

*Proof.* We first consider the shape of  $f'(x)$ . Assumption A3 tells us that  $f'(x)$  is positive for  $x < 0$  and negative for  $x > 0$ . From Assumption A5, the function  $f'(x)$  will have turning points at  $\pm a$  and these will be the only turning points. Hence we have the

following picture of  $f'(x)$ :

$$f'(x) \text{ is } \begin{cases} \text{positive and increasing,} & x \in (-\infty, -a) \\ \text{positive and decreasing,} & x \in (-a, 0) \\ \text{negative and decreasing,} & x \in (0, a) \\ \text{negative and increasing,} & x \in (a, \infty). \end{cases} \quad (6.83)$$

We also note, from A4, that  $f'(x)$  is an odd function. Using this and rearranging (6.82) we obtain the equivalent equation

$$g(\theta) = h(\theta) \quad (6.84)$$

where we have put  $g(\theta) = f'(\theta)$  and  $h(\theta) = -f'(\theta - (x_2 - x_1))$  for ease of notation.

If we assume that  $0 < x_2 - x_1 < 2a$  then we can consider possible solutions to (6.84) on each of the following intervals.

For  $\theta \in (-\infty, 0]$ ,  $g(\theta) \geq 0$  and  $h(\theta) < 0$  and so there are no possible solutions.

Likewise, for  $\theta \in [x_2 - x_1, \infty)$ ,  $g(\theta) < 0$  and  $h(\theta) \geq 0$  and so there are no possible solutions.

For  $\theta \in [-a + x_2 - x_1, a]$ ,  $g(\theta)$  is decreasing and  $h(\theta)$  is increasing and  $h(-a + x_2 - x_1) = g(a)$  (since  $f'$  is odd). Therefore there must be exactly one solution in this interval.

We note that if  $x_2 - x_1 \leq a$  then the above intervals cover the real line. In the case that  $a < x_2 - x_1 < 2a$  we need to consider additional intervals.

For  $\theta \in (a, x_2 - x_1)$ , from assumption A6,  $f'(\theta) < -f'(\theta - 2a) < -f'(\theta - (x_2 - x_1))$  since both  $-f'(\theta - 2a)$  and  $-f'(\theta - (x_2 - x_1))$  are increasing on this interval. Hence there can be no solutions to (6.84) on this interval.

For  $\theta \in (0, -a + x_2 - x_1)$  we can again use assumption A6 by observing that since

$$f'(\theta) < -f'(\theta - 2a) \quad (6.85)$$

for  $\theta \in (a, \infty)$ , we also have that for  $\theta \in (-\infty, -a)$

$$f'(-\theta) < -f'(-\theta - 2a) \quad (6.86)$$

and so for  $\theta \in (-\infty, a)$ ,

$$f'(-\theta + 2a) < -f'(-\theta) \quad (6.87)$$

which, since  $f'$  is odd, is equivalent to

$$-f'(\theta - 2a) < f'(\theta). \quad (6.88)$$

So for  $\theta \in (0, -a + x_2 - x_1)$ ,  $f'(\theta) > -f'(\theta - 2a) > -f'(\theta - x_2 - x_1)$  and there are no solutions to (6.84) on this interval either.

Since the above intervals cover the real line and since we have shown that there is only one solution in one of these intervals, (6.82) must have only one solution.  $\square$

### 6.4.3 Results for general $n$

To obtain results for  $n \geq 2$  we now restrict our component density to be normal with fixed variance  $\sigma^2$ . In this case, we can make use of the gradient function defined in Section 6.2.4 and equations, (6.27) to (6.29), which must be satisfied at a maximizing mixture.

When our component density is normal with variance  $\sigma^2$ , that is

$$f_\sigma(x) = \frac{1}{\sigma\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-x^2/2\sigma^2}, \quad (6.89)$$

the gradient function defined in (6.24), evaluated at a mixture  $Q$  which places masses  $\mathbf{p}$  at locations  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ , becomes

$$D_Q(\boldsymbol{\theta}; \mathbf{x}, f_\sigma) = -n + \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{\exp(-(x_i - \theta)^2/2\sigma^2)}{\sum_{j=1}^m p_j \exp(-(x_i - \theta_j)^2/2\sigma^2)}. \quad (6.90)$$

Equations (6.27) to (6.29) state that at a maximizing mixture  $\hat{Q}$ ,

$$\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n \Psi_k(x_i; \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}, \hat{\mathbf{p}}) = 1, \quad k = 1, \dots, m, \quad (6.91)$$

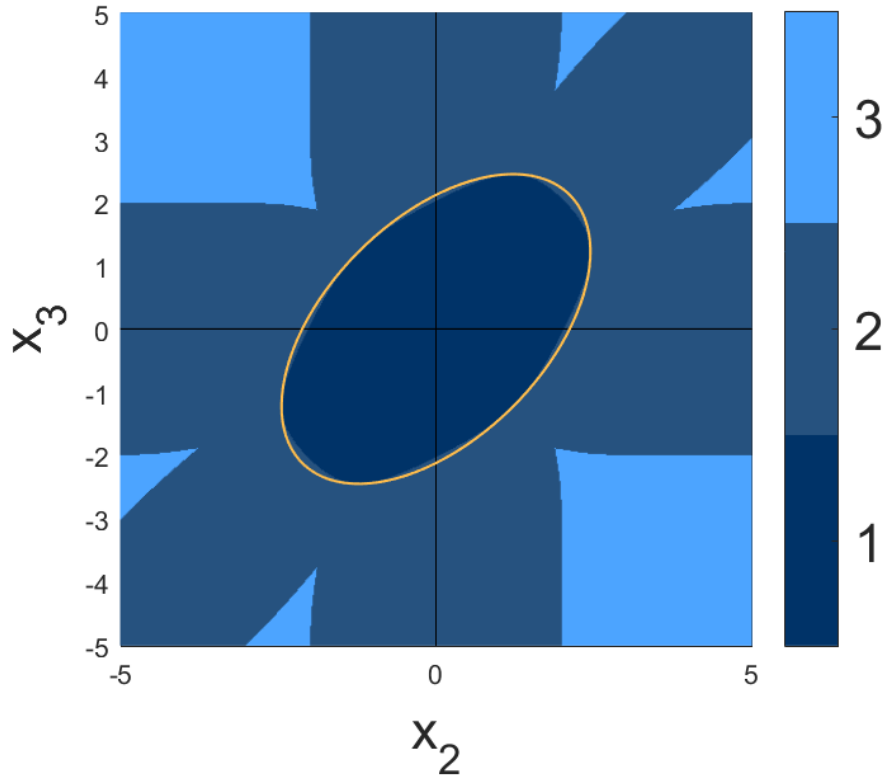
$$\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \Psi_k(x_i; \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}, \hat{\mathbf{p}}) = \theta_k, \quad k = 1, \dots, m, \quad (6.92)$$

$$\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - \theta_k)^2 \Psi_k(x_i; \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}, \hat{\mathbf{p}}) \leq \sigma^2, \quad k = 1, \dots, m, \quad (6.93)$$

where  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$  and  $\hat{\mathbf{p}}$  are the locations and masses of  $\hat{Q}$  and we have written

$$\Psi_k(x; \boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathbf{p}) = \Psi_k(x; \boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathbf{p}, f_\sigma) = \frac{f_\sigma(x - \theta_k)}{\sum_{j=1}^m p_j f_\sigma(x - \theta_j)} \quad (6.94)$$

for ease of notation.



**Figure 6.13** – The bound obtained in Theorem 6.11 tells us that  $C_1$  must lie within the orange ellipse. The true shape of  $C_1$  is given by the dark blue region.

We will show that these three equations constrain the regions  $C_1, \dots, C_n$  as defined in (6.64). This will be done in Theorem 6.12. However, as a gentle introduction, we will start with the much simpler problem of just bounding  $C_1$ .

**Theorem 6.11.** *If  $\mathbf{x} \in C_1$  then*

$$\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - \bar{\mathbf{x}})^2 \leq \sigma^2, \quad (6.95)$$

where

$$\bar{\mathbf{x}} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i. \quad (6.96)$$

*Proof.* If  $\mathbf{x} \in C_1$  then the maximizing mixture has one component and so  $\Psi_1(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathbf{p}) = 1$ . Then (6.92) gives us that  $\theta_1 = \bar{\mathbf{x}}$  and combining this with (6.93) completes the proof.  $\square$

In Figure 6.13 we compare the bound above to the ‘flag graphs’ we produced in section 6.3.2.

We now state a generalisation of Theorem 6.11 that bounds the regions  $C_1, \dots, C_n$ .



**Theorem 6.12.** *If  $\mathbf{x} \in C_m$  for some  $m \leq n$ , then there exists a subset of the  $x_i$ ,  $A$ , such that  $A$  contains at least  $n/m$  elements and*

$$\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i \in A} (x_i - \bar{x}_A)^2 \leq \sigma^2, \quad (6.97)$$

where

$$\bar{x}_A = \frac{1}{|A|} \sum_{i \in A} x_i. \quad (6.98)$$

*Proof.* Let  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$  and  $\hat{\mathbf{p}}$  represent an  $m$  point maximizing mixture of  $\mathbf{x} \in C_m$ . By Lemma 6.13, for every  $i \in \{1, \dots, n\}$  there exists a  $k \in \{1, \dots, m\}$  such that  $\Psi_k(x_i; \hat{\mathbf{p}}, \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}) \geq 1$ . Therefore by the pigeonhole principle there must exist some  $k^*$  such that  $\Psi_{k^*}(x_i; \hat{\mathbf{p}}, \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}) \geq 1$  for at least  $n/m$  different  $i$ . Define the set

$$A_{k^*} = \{i : \Psi_{k^*}(x_i; \hat{\mathbf{p}}, \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}) \geq 1\}, \quad (6.99)$$

which we know must have size  $|A_{k^*}| \geq n/m$ .

From (6.93),

$$\sigma^2 \geq \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - \theta_{k^*})^2 \Psi_{k^*}(x_i; \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}, \hat{\mathbf{p}}) \quad (6.100)$$

$$\geq \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i \in A_{k^*}} (x_i - \theta_{k^*})^2 \Psi_{k^*}(x_i; \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}, \hat{\mathbf{p}}) \quad (6.101)$$

$$\geq \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i \in A_{k^*}} (x_i - \theta_{k^*})^2, \quad (6.102)$$

since  $\Psi_{k^*}(x_i; \hat{\mathbf{p}}, \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}) \geq 1$  for all  $i \in A_{k^*}$ . Finally, we can reduce (6.102) by replacing  $\theta_{k^*}$  with  $\bar{x}_{A_{k^*}}$  to get that

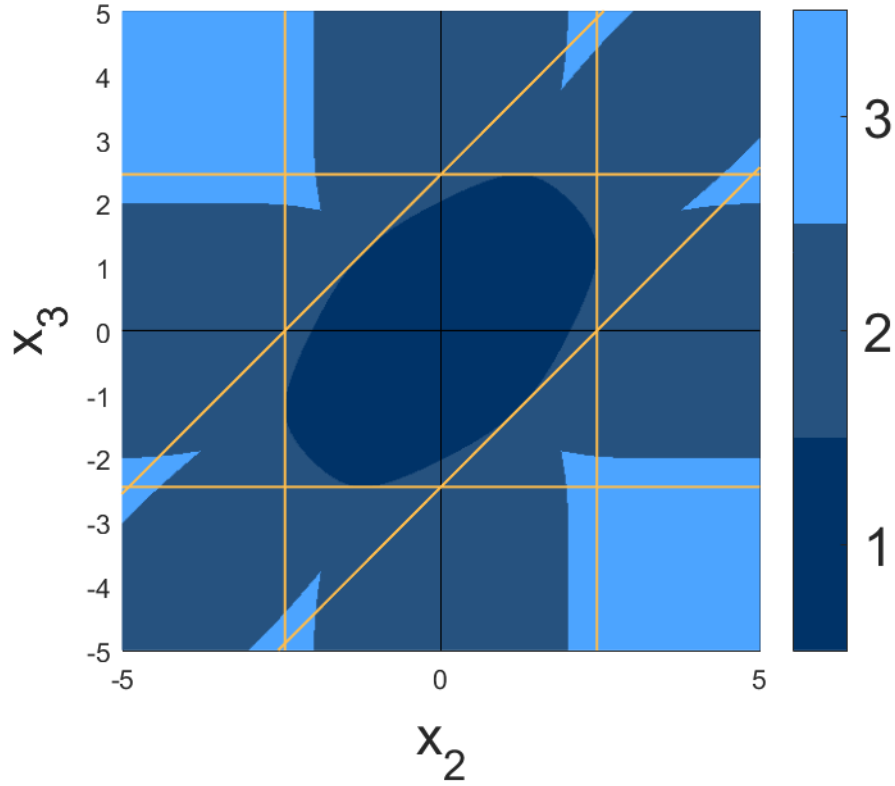
$$\sigma^2 \geq \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i \in A_{k^*}} (x_i - \bar{x}_{A_{k^*}})^2. \quad (6.103)$$

□

The bound for the  $C_2$  region given by Theorem 6.12 is compared to the ‘flag graphs’ from Section 6.3.2 in Figure 6.14. We observe that the bound does not appear as tight as the one bounding  $C_1$ .

**Lemma 6.13.** *Let  $f$  be a density supported on all of  $\mathbb{R}$ . For all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ , and all discrete probability distributions with masses  $\mathbf{p}$  at locations  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ ,*

$$\max_k [\Psi_k(x; \mathbf{p}, \boldsymbol{\theta}, f)] \geq 1. \quad (6.104)$$



**Figure 6.14** – The bound obtained in Theorem 6.12 tells us that  $C_2$  must lie between the pairs of parallel orange lines. The true shape of  $C_2$  is given by the middle blue shaded region.

*Proof.* Let  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ , and  $\theta, \mathbf{p}$  be the locations and weights respectively of an  $m$  point discrete probability distribution. Choose  $\theta_{k^*}$  to be the smallest  $\theta_j$  that satisfies

$$f(x - \theta_{k^*}) \geq f(x - \theta_j) \quad j = 1, \dots, m. \quad (6.105)$$

(We choose the smallest in case there is more than one  $\theta_j$  which satisfies the above). Then

$$\Psi_{k^*}(x; \mathbf{p}, \theta, f) = \frac{f(x - \theta_{k^*})}{\sum_{j=1}^m p_j f(x - \theta_j)} \geq \frac{f(x - \theta_{k^*})}{\sum_{j=1}^m p_j f(x - \theta_{k^*})} = 1. \quad (6.106)$$

□

#### 6.4.4 Treating $x$ as random

Up until now, we have treated  $x$  as fixed, not random, and treated the maximum likelihood problem purely as an optimization one, rather than a statistical one. However,

for this section we consider a random sample

$$\mathbf{X} = (X_1, \dots, X_n) \quad (6.107)$$

where the  $X_i$  are i.i.d. with normal distribution

$$X_i \sim N(\mu, \sigma_1^2). \quad (6.108)$$

Given a component density, we may consider the probabilities

$$\mathbb{P}[\mathbf{X} \in C_m], \quad m = 1, \dots, n. \quad (6.109)$$

**Theorem 6.14.** *Let the component density with which we are finding a maximum likelihood location mixture be normal with variance  $\sigma_2^2$ . Then*

$$\mathbb{P}[\mathbf{X} \in C_1] \leq \mathbb{P}\left(\chi_{n-1}^2 \leq \frac{n\sigma_2^2}{\sigma_1^2}\right) \quad (6.110)$$

where  $\chi_{n-1}^2$  is chi-squared with  $n - 1$  degrees of freedom.

*Proof.* From Theorem 6.11,

$$\mathbb{P}(\mathbf{X} \in C_1) \leq \mathbb{P}\left(\sum_{i=1}^n (X_i - \bar{\mathbf{X}})^2 \leq n\sigma_2^2\right) \quad (6.111)$$

$$= \mathbb{P}\left(\frac{1}{\sigma_1^2} \sum_{i=1}^n (X_i - \bar{\mathbf{X}})^2 \leq \frac{n\sigma_2^2}{\sigma_1^2}\right) \quad (6.112)$$

$$= \mathbb{P}\left(\chi_{n-1}^2 \leq \frac{n\sigma_2^2}{\sigma_1^2}\right). \quad (6.113)$$

□

Theorem 6.14 is of particular interest when the  $\sigma_1 = \sigma_2$ . In this case, our mixture can select the ‘true’ number of components, which will happen if  $\mathbf{X} \in C_1$ . The probability of this occurring satisfies

$$\mathbb{P}(\mathbf{X} \in C_1) \leq \mathbb{P}(\chi_{n-1}^2 \leq n) \quad (6.114)$$

which converges to  $1/2$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . This is a simple proof that the number of components chosen by a normal location mixture is not a consistent estimator for the true number of components.

Similar results to this have already been discovered. In [28], Hartigan considered the mixture

$$(1 - p)N(0, 1) + pN(\theta, 1) \quad (6.115)$$

and showed that the likelihood ratio between  $\theta = 0$  and  $\theta \neq 0$  converges to  $\infty$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . Also related is the result [37] that certain penalised likelihoods do not underestimate the true number of components (and so it is reasonable to expect that the unpenalised likelihood might overestimate the true number of components).

In this section, we have taken advantage of the simple form that the gradient function and its derivatives take when the component density is normal. One might consider using equations (6.27) through (6.29) to find analogous results for the Cauchy density (which we considered in Section 6.4.1) or other densities outside of the normal family. However, we found that the derivatives of the gradient function were too complex to be able to generalise these results to other component densities.

## 6.5 Conclusion

In this chapter we have analysed the behaviour of the mixing distribution of certain maximum likelihood location mixtures. We were concerned mainly with  $K_{\mathbf{x}}$  - the number of components in these mixtures, or equivalently, the number of points of support in the corresponding mixing distribution. While bounds on  $K_{\mathbf{x}}$  existed in the literature, mainly thanks to Lindsay's seminal papers on the geometry of mixture likelihoods, empirical results suggested that in many cases these bounds could be significantly tightened. In exploring these empirical results, we demonstrated that given a component density, we could partition  $\mathbb{R}^n$  into sets,  $C_m$ , based on the number of components that each point  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$  required. For small  $n$  these could be easily visualized and these plots provided a reference against which to compare any bounds on  $K_{\mathbf{x}}$ .

We proved a number of results providing bounds on  $K_{\mathbf{x}}$  that to the best of our knowledge are new. For  $n = 2$ , we found an explicit formula for  $K_{\mathbf{x}}$  for a certain class of symmetric, unimodal component densities. For  $n \geq 2$ , we restricted our attention to normal component densities and, for each  $m \leq n$ , provided a necessary condition for  $\mathbf{x} \in C_m$ . We used these bounds to show that the number of components chosen by a normal location mixture is not a consistent estimator for the true number of components.

Overall, this chapter provided new insights into maximum likelihood location mixtures by treating the problem as an optimization problem, rather than a statistical problem. In the next chapter we will examine another optimization problem in statistics which exhibits a similar phenomenon. In it we find a probability mass function as the solution

to an optimization problem, and discover that in a large number of cases it is supported on only a few points.

## Chapter 7

# Deconvolution

### 7.1 Introduction

In this final chapter, we look at another statistical problem in which we perform an optimization over discrete probability distributions and find that the number of points of support of the optimal distribution is much smaller than expected. In contrast to Chapter 6, we will take a descriptive and practically minded point of view, rather than the more theory driven previous chapter. This is partly due to the additional complexity of the problem, which prevents many of the tools used on maximum likelihood mixtures from working here. However, this does not stop us from pointing out similarities between the two problems, and an empirical exploration allows us to benefit from the similar phenomenon that occurs in a variety of scenarios. The problem is one of *deconvolution*, the recovery of the distribution,  $F_X$ , or density,  $f_X$ , of some random variable  $X$ , from measurements of

$$W = X + U \tag{7.1}$$

where the measurement error  $U$  is independent of  $X$ , and  $U$  and  $X$  are unobserved.

In the case that we know the distribution of  $U$ , Carroll and Hall [10] and Stefanski and Carroll [65] proposed a deconvolution kernel density estimator of  $f_X$ . If the distribution of  $U$  is unknown, then it is often possible to estimate it from replicate measurements,  $W_{jk} = X_j + U_{jk}$ , for  $1 \leq k \leq N_j$  and  $1 \leq j \leq n$ , where the  $U_{jk}$ 's are independent. Delaigle, Hall, and Meister provided an estimator for  $f_X$  in this scenario. However, until Delaigle's and Hall's 2016 paper, "Methodology for nonparametric deconvolution when the error distribution is unknown," [15], there had been no nonparametric method to estimate the distribution of  $X$  when we had no data on the distribution of  $U$  (see the discussion in Section 1 of [15]).

In this chapter, we focus on the methods introduced in [15]. We will start in Section 7.1.1 by summarizing deconvolution methods for the cases where the error distribution is known, or estimated from replicates. This will serve as a basis for a discussion of Delaigle's and Hall's [15] paper in Section 7.2. In Section 7.3, we will empirically demonstrate that these methods produce a similar phenomenon to the one encountered in Chapter 6 — the probability mass function which we obtain from an optimization problem has only a few points of support — and we will explore how this phenomenon manifests under various conditions. We will also point out how we can take advantage of this phenomenon. Finally, in Section 7.4, we will make a general observation about the deconvolution problem, and point out some similarities between it and the mixture problem of Chapter 6.

### 7.1.1 Prior deconvolution methods

We start with the estimator of Stefanski and Carroll in [65]. In this scenario, we let  $X$  and  $U$  be independent random variables with probability density functions  $f_X$  and  $f_U$  respectively. We observe a set of  $n$  independent observations,  $\{W_j\}_{j=1}^n$ , where each  $W_j$  is an observation of the  $W$  of (7.1). Furthermore, we assume that  $f_U$  is known. Given this information, the goal is to estimate  $f_X$  from the  $W_j$ 's.

The estimator makes use of characteristic functions. A random variable  $Y$  with density  $f_Y$  has characteristic function

$$\phi_Y(t) = \int_{\mathbb{R}} e^{itx} f_Y(x) dx \quad (7.2)$$

which can be inverted via

$$f_Y(x) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{\mathbb{R}} e^{-itx} \phi_Y(t) dt \quad (7.3)$$

if  $\phi_Y$  is integrable. One property of characteristic functions that is convenient for this deconvolution problem is that since  $X$  and  $U$  are independent, we know that the characteristic function of  $W = X + U$  is

$$\phi_W = \phi_X \phi_U, \quad (7.4)$$

or equivalently,

$$\phi_X = \frac{\phi_W}{\phi_U} \quad (7.5)$$

if  $|\phi_U(t)| > 0$  for all real  $t$ . We assume this in constructing the following estimator.

Let  $K$  be a bounded, even, function that integrates to 1 whose Fourier transform,  $\phi_K$ , satisfies

$$\sup_t |\phi_K(t)/\phi_U(t/h)| < \infty, \quad \int_{\mathbb{R}} |\phi_K(t)/\phi_U(t/h)| dt < \infty, \quad (7.6)$$

for any fixed  $h > 0$  (we impose these conditions to make various functions integrable). We may estimate the density of  $W$  via the usual kernel density estimator [66, Section 20.3]

$$\hat{f}_W(x) = \frac{1}{nh} \sum_{j=1}^n K((x - W_j)/h), \quad (7.7)$$

which has characteristic function

$$\hat{\phi}_W(t) = \phi_{W_{\text{EMP}}}(t) \phi_K(ht) \quad (7.8)$$

where  $\phi_{W_{\text{EMP}}}(t)$  denotes the empirical characteristic function of  $\{W_j\}_{j=1}^n$ ,

$$\phi_{W_{\text{EMP}}}(t) = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{j=1}^n e^{itW_j}. \quad (7.9)$$

Motivated by (7.5), we may estimate the characteristic function of  $X$  by

$$\hat{\phi}_X = \hat{\phi}_W / \phi_U \quad (7.10)$$

and the density of  $X$  by inverting  $\hat{\phi}_X$ . Overall, the estimator for  $f_X$  is given by

$$\hat{f}_X(x) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{\mathbb{R}} e^{-itx} \phi_K(ht) \phi_{W_{\text{EMP}}}(t) / \phi_U(t) dt. \quad (7.11)$$

If the distribution of  $U$  is unknown, it is often possible to estimate it if replicate measurements are present. Methods for deconvolution with the presence of replicates have been presented in [39], [41], [16], and also [51] in the case of heteroscedastic errors. Here we look at the estimator of Delaigle, Hall, and Meister [16] as it has the most similarities with the estimator of interest in this chapter.

In this setting, we measure

$$W_{jk} = X_j + U_{jk} \quad j = 1, \dots, n \text{ and } k = 1, \dots, N_j \quad (7.12)$$



where the  $X_j$  and  $U_{jk}$  are independent and are identically distributed as  $X$  and  $U$  respectively. A consistent estimator of  $\phi_U(t)$  is

$$\hat{\phi}_U(t) = \left| \frac{1}{N} \sum_{j=1}^n \sum_{(k_1, k_2) \in \mathcal{S}_j} \cos(t(W_{jk_1} - W_{jk_2})) \right|^{1/2}, \quad (7.13)$$

where  $\mathcal{S}_j$  is the set of  $N_j(N_j - 1)/2$  pairs  $(k_1, k_2)$  with  $1 \leq k_1 < k_2 \leq N_j$ , and  $N = \sum_{j=1}^n N_j(N_j - 1)/2$  is the total number of terms inside (7.13). In light of (7.11), this suggests an estimator of  $f_X$  given by

$$\hat{f}_X(x) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{\mathbb{R}} e^{-itx} \phi_K(ht) \phi_{W_{\text{EMP}}}(t) / (\hat{\phi}_U(t) + \rho) dt \quad (7.14)$$

with

$$\phi_{W_{\text{EMP}}}(t) = \frac{1}{M} \sum_{j=1}^n \sum_{k=1}^{N_j} e^{itW_{jk}} \quad (7.15)$$

where  $h > 0$  is a bandwidth,  $\rho \geq 0$  is a ridge parameter (which we explain below),  $M = \sum_j N_j$ , and  $K$  is a symmetric kernel function, whose Fourier transform,  $\phi_K$ , has compact support. As in (7.6), this last condition is to make sure that an integral (in this case, (7.14)) converges. The condition is stronger than (7.6) since the error distribution is unknown and so we have to account for more possibilities.

The presence of the ridge parameter is to account for potential fluctuations in  $\hat{\phi}_U$  that could cause the denominator in (7.14) to be zero, or too close to zero. We may alternatively use another method to prevent  $\hat{\phi}_U(t)$  from getting too close to zero such as replacing  $\hat{\phi}_U(t)$  with some other function for  $|t|$  larger than some threshold  $t^*$ .

A similar approach could be used in scenarios where we are able to sample directly from the distribution of  $U$ . See also [19] and [55] for further discussion of cases where samples of the errors are available.

In the case where we do not know the distribution of  $U$ , nor have access to replicate measurements or direct measurements from  $U$ , methods for deconvolution generally require  $F_U$  to have a parametric or semi-parametric form. Such methods can be found in [8], [53], [9], and [33]. One exception to this is found in [63] where the authors discuss non-parametric estimation of an errors-in-variables regression problem without extra information about the error distributions. However, in regression problems one has access to not only observations of  $W = X + U$ , but also observations of  $Y = g(X) + \epsilon$ , where  $\epsilon$  denotes some independent experimental error. This extra data contains information about  $F_U$  which, at least in theory, makes it easier to estimate than in the plain deconvolution case.

## 7.2 Method for deconvolution when the error is unknown

Delaigle's and Hall's 2016 paper [15], presents a non-parametric deconvolution estimator for when the error distribution is unknown, and we do not have access to replicates or samples from the error distribution. In this section we summarise the estimator of [15], and discuss some practicalities that arise in the implementation.

### 7.2.1 Problem Setup

Suppose that we observe  $(W_1, \dots, W_n)$ , where

$$W_j = X_j + U_j \quad j = 1, \dots, n \quad (7.16)$$

and  $X_j$  and  $U_j$  are independent and identically distributed as  $X$  and  $U$  respectively, and  $X$  and  $U$  are independent.

We need the following assumptions about  $U$  and its characteristic function,  $\phi_U$ :

A7.  $\phi_U$  is real-valued.

A8. For  $U$  discrete,  $\phi_U$  is non-negative and is zero at at most a countable number of points, and for  $U$  continuous,  $\phi_U$  is strictly positive on the whole real line.

Assumption A7 is equivalent to assuming that the distribution of  $U$  is symmetric. Assumption A8 is a standard assumption in deconvolution problems. These conditions are mild and some common distributions which satisfy them when centred around zero include the normal distribution, the Laplace distribution, and the Cauchy distribution.

We also make the following assumptions on the distribution of  $X$ :

A9.  $F_X$  is not symmetric.

A10. It is not possible to decompose  $X$  as

$$X = Y + Z \quad (7.17)$$

for nondegenerate and independent random variables  $Y$  and  $Z$  with  $F_Z$  symmetric.

We require these assumptions because all we know about  $F_U$  is that it is symmetric. So if  $F_X$  was also symmetric, we could not distinguish it from  $F_U$ , and if  $X$  is itself made up of a symmetric part  $Z$ , we could not distinguish  $U$  from  $Z + U$ .

To form the estimator for  $F_X$ , we will make use of the *phase function*, which for a random variable  $V$ , is defined by

$$\rho_V = \frac{\phi_V}{|\phi_V|} \quad (7.18)$$

on all points where  $\phi_V \neq 0$ . Note that from Assumption A7, we have that

$$\phi_U = |\phi_U| \quad (7.19)$$

and so  $\rho_U = 1$ . Since  $W = X + U$ , with  $X$  and  $U$  independent, we have that

$$\phi_W = \phi_X \phi_U \quad (7.20)$$

and so from (7.19), on all points where  $\phi_U \neq 0$ ,

$$\rho_W = \rho_X. \quad (7.21)$$

In fact, all random variables of the form  $V = X + Z$ , where  $Z$  is symmetric and independent of  $X$ , will have phase function  $\rho_W$ , and the variance of these will satisfy  $\text{Var}(V) \geq \text{Var}(X)$ . This motivates the final assumption we make for  $X$ :

A11.  $F_X$  has the uniquely smallest variance out of all distributions with phase function  $\rho_X$ .

## 7.2.2 Estimator

From the discussion above, we might think to take our estimator for  $F_X$  to be the distribution that has smallest variance out of all distributions with phase function equal to some estimator of  $\rho_W$  constructed from  $W_1, \dots, W_n$ . However, when it comes to the implementation of our estimator, there are some additional details which make it more complex. We will introduce these details by presenting a hierarchy of estimators, leading from the idealised problem to what we implement in practice.

### 7.2.2.1 Estimator 1

As mentioned above, ideally we would like to  $\hat{F}_X$  to be the distribution with smallest variance out of all distributions with phase function equal to some estimator of  $\rho_W$ . We can estimate  $\rho_W$  by

$$\hat{\rho}_W = \frac{\hat{\phi}_W}{|\hat{\psi}_W|^{1/2}} \quad (7.22)$$

where

$$\hat{\phi}_W(t) = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{j=1}^n \exp(itW_j) \quad (7.23)$$

and

$$\hat{\psi}_W(t) = \frac{1}{n(n-1)} \sum_{k=1}^n \sum_{j \neq k} \exp(it(W_j - W_k)) \quad (7.24)$$

are consistent estimators of  $\phi_W$  and  $\psi_W = |\phi_W|^2$  respectively. This gives us our first estimator,

$$\hat{F}_X^1 = \arg \min_{F \in \mathcal{F}_1} \text{Var}(F), \quad (7.25)$$

where

$$\mathcal{F}_1 = \{F : \rho_F(t) = \hat{\rho}_W(t), \forall t \in \mathbb{R}\} \quad (7.26)$$

is the set of distributions with phase function equal to  $\hat{\rho}_W$ .

### 7.2.2.2 Estimator 2

However,  $\hat{\rho}_W(t)$  grows less reliable for large values of  $|t|$ , and so we should preference matching  $\hat{\rho}_X$  and  $\hat{\rho}_W$  around  $t = 0$  over large values of  $|t|$ . Furthermore, it is not clear that there even exists a distribution with phase function equal to  $\hat{\rho}_W(t)$  for all  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ . Taking this into consideration, and noting that when  $\rho_F(t) = \hat{\rho}_W(t)$  we have  $\hat{\phi}_W(t)|\phi_F(t)| - |\hat{\psi}_W(t)|^{1/2} \phi_F(t) = 0$ , our goal is to instead choose an  $F$  that makes

$$T(F) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left| \hat{\phi}_W(t)|\phi_F(t)| - |\hat{\psi}_W(t)|^{1/2} \phi_F(t) \right|^2 w_1(t) dt \quad (7.27)$$

small, where  $w_1(t)$  is some non-negative symmetric weight function that assigns greater weight when  $|t|$  is small. This gives us our second estimator. Find

$$T^{\min} = \min_F T(F) \quad (7.28)$$

and put

$$\hat{F}_X^2 = \arg \min_{F \in \mathcal{F}_2} \text{Var} F, \quad (7.29)$$

where

$$\mathcal{F}_2 = \{F : T(F) = T^{\min}\}. \quad (7.30)$$

### 7.2.3 Estimator 3

A concern that we might have at this stage is that even though  $\phi_U = \phi_W/\phi_X$ , there is no guarantee that

$$\hat{\phi}_U = \hat{\phi}_W/\hat{\phi}_X \quad (7.31)$$

is a valid characteristic function, or that it is real-valued as per Assumption A7. For  $\hat{\phi}_U$  to be real-valued we require that

$$\Im \left( \frac{\hat{\phi}_W}{\phi_F} \right) = 0 \quad (7.32)$$

where we use  $\Im(z)$  to denote the imaginary part of  $z$ . Using  $\bar{z}$  to denote the complex conjugate of  $z$ , we can replace this by,

$$\Im \left( \frac{\hat{\phi}_W \bar{\phi}_F}{|\phi_F|^2} \right) = 0, \quad (7.33)$$

or again,

$$\Im \left( \hat{\phi}_W \bar{\phi}_F \right) = 0. \quad (7.34)$$

In an attempt to satisfy this, we construct a penalty

$$P_1(F) = \int \Im \left( \hat{\phi}_W \bar{\phi}_F \right) w_2(t) dt, \quad (7.35)$$

which we desire to be small, where  $w_2(t)$  is some non-negative symmetric weight function with bounded support.

It is difficult to determine whether a given function is a characteristic function, but we can at least try to force  $\hat{\phi}_U$  to have magnitude less than or equal to 1, as all valid characteristic functions do. We use the penalty

$$P_2(F) = \int \left( |\hat{\phi}_U(t)| - 1 \right) I_{\{|\hat{\phi}_U(t)| > 1\}} w_2(t) dt. \quad (7.36)$$

Overall, our third estimator, and the one we use in practice, is as follows. Let  $\mathcal{F}$  be the set of distributions over which we search for our estimator (for example, discrete distributions with no more than  $m$  points of support). Find

$$F_0 = \arg \min_{F \in \mathcal{F}} [T(F) + \lambda_1 P_1(F) + \lambda_2 P_2(F)], \quad (7.37)$$

for some choice of scaling factors  $\lambda_1$  and  $\lambda_2$ , and set

$$T^{\min} = T(F_0) \quad (7.38)$$

$$P_1^{\min} = P_1(F_0) \quad (7.39)$$

$$P_2^{\min} = P_2(F_0). \quad (7.40)$$

Then our estimator for  $F_X$  is

$$\hat{F}_X = \arg \min_{F \in \mathcal{F}} \text{Var} F \quad (7.41)$$

subject to the constraints  $T(F) \leq T^{\min}$ ,  $P_1(F) \leq P_1^{\min}$ , and  $P_2(F) \leq P_2^{\min}$ .

The idea behind these constraints is that, ideally, we want  $T(F) = P_1(F) = P_2(F) = 0$  but cannot achieve this in practice. So instead, in our first optimization, we search for a more reasonable set of values to which we should restrict them. One might expect that  $F_0$  is the only distribution which satisfies these constraints, and so we would always find that  $\hat{F}_X = F_0$ . However, in practice, we have not observed this. Either our first optimization does not find the global minimum, or there are multiple distributions which attain the minimum values for  $T$ ,  $P_1$ , and  $P_2$ . One might also choose to replace  $T^{\min}$  with  $T^{\min}(1 + \delta)$  for some small  $\delta$  (and similarly for  $P_1^{\min}$  and  $P_2^{\min}$ ) so that we are searching over a larger space in (7.41).

#### 7.2.4 Numerical Implementation

Delaigle and Hall [15] suggested performing this optimization problem by approximating  $F_X$  with a discrete distribution on  $m$  points, allowing  $m$  potentially to diverge with the sample size. They suggested choosing the locations of the probability masses of that discrete distribution,  $\boldsymbol{\theta} = (\theta_1, \dots, \theta_m)$ , to be distributed uniformly but randomly along  $[\min(W_i), \max(W_i)]$  and letting the corresponding probability weights  $\mathbf{p} = (p_1, \dots, p_m)$  be the variables over which we find the solution of (7.37) – (7.41). We will denote by  $F_{\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathbf{p}}$  the distribution that places mass  $p_j$  at  $\theta_j$  for  $j = 1, \dots, m$ . Its characteristic function is given by

$$\phi_{\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathbf{p}}(t) = \sum_{j=1}^m p_j \exp(it\theta_j) \quad (7.42)$$

and its phase function by

$$\rho_{\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathbf{p}}(t) = \frac{\sum_{j=1}^m p_j \exp(it\theta_j)}{\left| \sum_{j=1}^m p_j \exp(it\theta_j) \right|}. \quad (7.43)$$

It has variance

$$\text{Var}(F_{\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathbf{p}}) = \sum_{j=1}^m p_j \theta_j^2 - \left( \sum_{j=1}^m p_j \theta_j \right)^2. \quad (7.44)$$

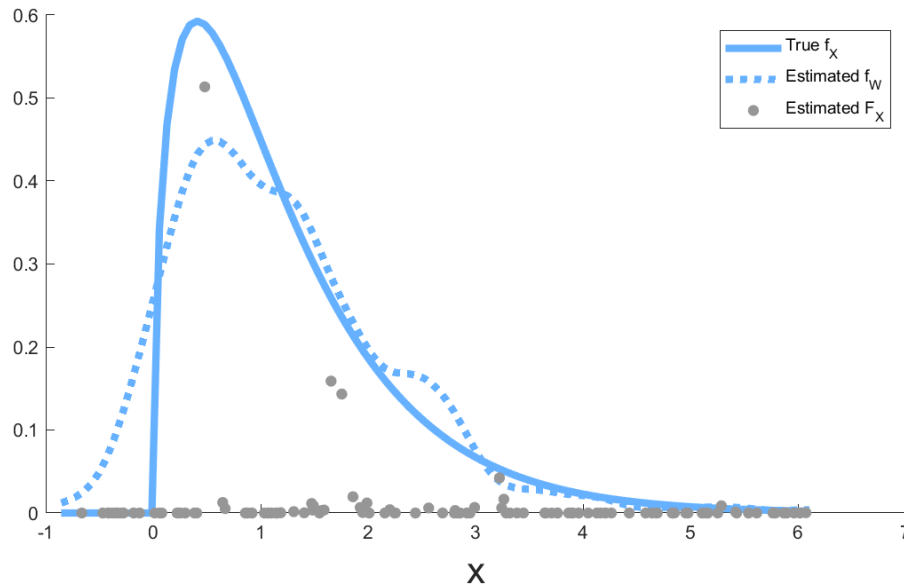
For the weight function,  $w_1(t)$ , Delaigle and Hall [15] used the Epanechnikov kernel, rescaled to an interval  $[-t^*, t^*]$ . To choose  $t^*$ , they pointed out that since  $\hat{\phi}_W$  is an unbiased estimator for  $\phi_W$ , and since it has variance no more than  $1/n$ , we can expect it to be a reasonable estimator when  $|\hat{\phi}_W(t)| \geq n^{-1/4}$ . They therefore chose  $t^*$  to be the smallest  $t > 0$  such that

$$\left| \hat{\phi}_W(t) \right| \leq n^{-1/4}. \quad (7.45)$$

For the weight function in the penalty terms, they used  $w_2(t) = I_{\{|t| \leq t^*\}}$ . They used  $\lambda_1 = \lambda_2 = 500\Delta t$  for the scaling factors in (7.37), where  $\Delta t$  is the distance between grid points in their approximation of the integrals in (7.35) and (7.36). There is some freedom of choice in the number of points in the approximating discrete distribution but the authors suggested that in their experience,  $m = 5\sqrt{n}$  is a reasonable choice.

### 7.2.5 Example

In Figure 7.1, we provide an example of a typical output of the method just described. In this example we have sampled  $n = 500$  points of  $W = X + U$  where the true distribution,  $F_X$ , is chi-squared with 3 degrees of freedom, rescaled to have variance  $\sigma_X^2 = 1$ . The error distribution,  $F_U$ , is normal with variance  $\sigma_U^2 = 0.2$ , resulting in a noise to signal ratio (NSR) of 0.2. Our deconvolved estimator,  $\hat{F}_{\theta, \mathbf{p}}$ , is represented by placing a grey point at each  $(\theta_j, p_j)$ . For comparison, we also plot the true density,  $f_X(x)$ , as well as an empirical kernel density estimator of  $f_W$ .



**Figure 7.1** – A typical deconvolution following the method of Delaigle and Hall [15].

There are two things we wish to highlight here. The first is that the majority of the probability weights  $p_j$  are either close to or equal to zero. Only a select few points seem to contribute notably to the estimator. This is reminiscent of Figure 6.8 in which most of the probability masses in the unsimplified mixing distribution were redundant. This phenomenon appears consistently over a wide variety of deconvolution problems and we will explore this further in Section 6.3.

The second point we want to highlight is that it is hard to compare our discrete estimator with the continuous true density. Based on Figure 7.1 alone, one might even say that  $\hat{F}_{\theta,p}$  is a very poor estimator for  $F_X$ . So we now describe how we can construct a continuous estimator from the discrete one. This continuous estimator will allow us to more intuitively evaluate how well our deconvolution has performed.

### 7.2.6 Converting to continuous distribution

If  $X$  is continuous, then we will often want to use  $\hat{F}_X = F_{\theta,p}$  to create an estimate of the density,  $f_X$ . Perhaps the most obvious solution is to use

$$\hat{f}_X(x) = \sum_{j=1}^m p_j K((x - \theta_j)/h) \quad (7.46)$$

where  $K$  is a kernel and  $h > 0$  is a bandwidth. This is exactly equivalent to

$$\hat{f}_X(x) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-itx} \phi_{\theta,p}(t) \phi_K(ht) dt \quad (7.47)$$

where  $\phi_K$  is the Fourier transform of  $K$ . However, since we only used  $t \in [-t^*, t^*]$  when constructing  $\phi_{\theta,p}$ , it is reasonable to assume that  $\phi_{\theta,p}(t)$  is less reliable for  $t$  outside this range. This motivates replacing  $\phi_{\theta,p}(t)$  with

$$\tilde{\phi}(t) = \begin{cases} \phi_{\theta,p}(t), & t \in [-t^*, t^*], \\ r(t), & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases} \quad (7.48)$$

where  $r(t)$  is some ridge function. Delaigle and Hall [15] suggest following [16] and using

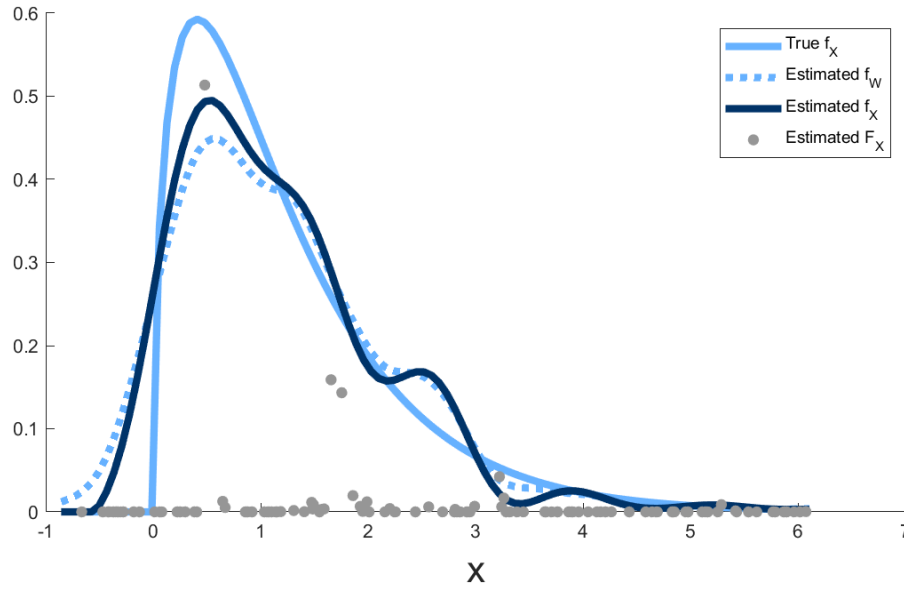
$$r = \hat{\phi}_W / \hat{\phi}_{U,P} \quad (7.49)$$

where  $\hat{\phi}_{U,P}$  is the characteristic function of a Laplace distribution with variance equal to an estimator of the variance of  $U$ , obtained as a by-product of their estimator of  $\phi_U$ . They also suggest choosing the bandwidth,  $h$ , using the two-stage plug-in bandwidth of Delaigle and Gijbels [13] [14]. This method requires that  $\phi_U$  is known, however, we may simply replace it by its estimator,

$$\hat{\phi}_U(t) = \frac{|\hat{\phi}_W|}{|\hat{\phi}_{\theta,p}|}. \quad (7.50)$$

In Figure 7.2 we add our continuous estimator,  $\hat{f}_X(x)$ , to the results from Figure 7.1. Now it is easy to visually confirm that our estimator has indeed improved upon the





**Figure 7.2** – A typical deconvolution following the method of Delaigle and Hall [15] with the continuous estimator  $\hat{f}_X$ .

empirical kernel density estimator for  $f_W$ .

We wish to remark here that the conversion from the discrete  $F_{\theta,p}$  to the continuous  $\hat{f}_X$  has no effect on the phenomenon of interest in this chapter. We are mainly interested in the probability masses of the discrete distribution  $F_{\theta,p}$ . However, because we wish to include  $\hat{f}_X(x)$  in our plots, we have included this section for completeness.

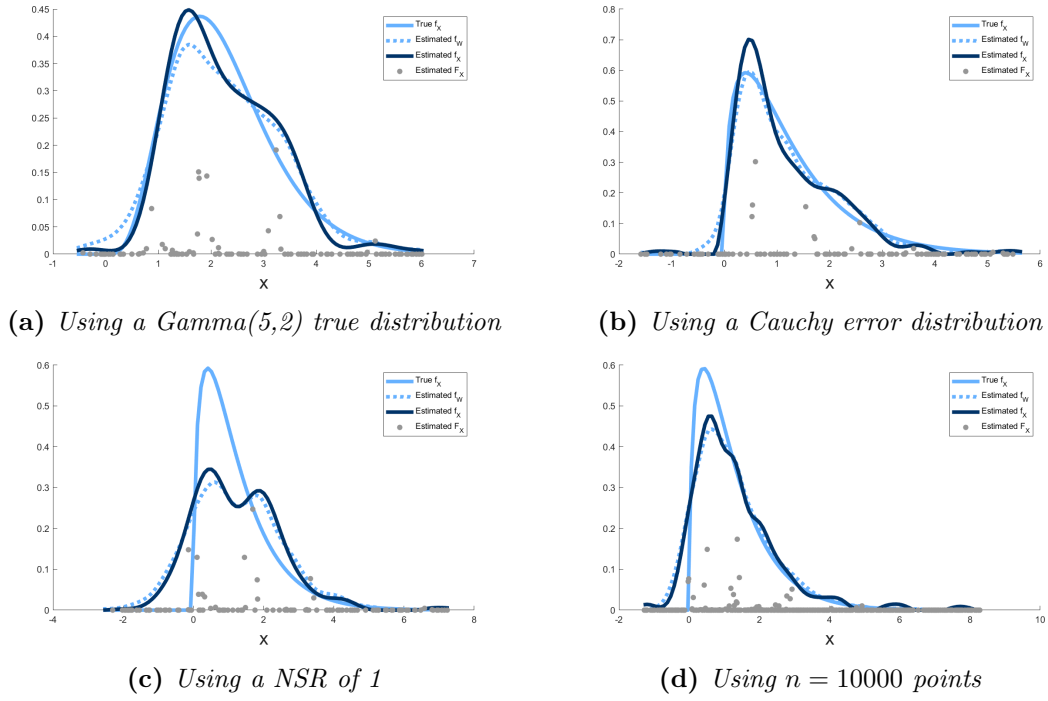
### 7.3 Empirical Results

Following the methods outlined above, the authors noted that  $F_{\theta,p}$  was usually supported on a small number of points. That is, only a few of the  $p_j$  were non-zero. A typical example of this was given in Figures 7.1 and 7.2.

A theoretical justification for this behaviour is hard to obtain. In Section 7.4 we make an observation about the problem which could be thought of as being in favour of this phenomenon, but for the most part, we have no rigorous explanation for why it occurs.

In this section, we instead explore the phenomenon empirically, and suggest that we might benefit by allowing both the  $\theta_j$  and  $p_j$  to be the variables of our optimization, rather than fixing the  $\theta_j$  as suggested in [15].

We start by demonstrating the phenomenon using a variety of parameters and distributions. The base example (Figure 7.2) has the following setup:



**Figure 7.3** – Four variations on the base example in Figure 7.2.

1. The true distribution,  $F_X$ , is chi-squared with 3 degrees of freedom, rescaled to have variance  $\sigma_X^2 = 1$ .
2. The error distribution,  $F_U$ , is normal.
3. The noise to signal ratio (NSR) is 1/5. That is,  $\sigma_U^2 = \sigma_X^2/5$ .
4. We sample  $n = 500$  points of  $W = X + U$ .

As recommended in [15], we use  $m = 5\sqrt{n}$  point masses in our approximating distribution  $\hat{F}_X$ . In Figures 7.3a, 7.3b, 7.3c, and 7.3d we change properties 1, 2, 3, and 4 respectively and plot the result. Of particular interest in each plot is  $\hat{F}_X$  which we represent by placing a grey point at each probability mass. In each of these figures, as well as in the base example in Figure 7.2, we observe that the majority of the probability masses of  $\hat{F}_X$  take values very close to, or equal to zero.

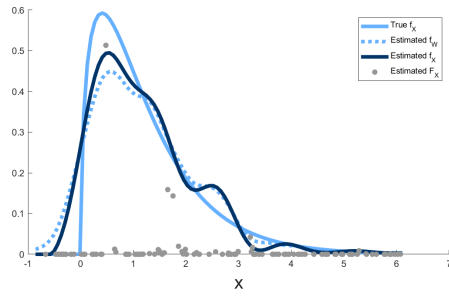
Given that most of the probability masses of  $\hat{F}_X$  do not contribute to the final density, we might hope to reduce the complexity of our optimization problem by using a more appropriate number of masses. Of course, we do not know a priori where these masses should be located along the x axis, and so should make their locations variables in our optimization. While this essentially doubles the dimension of our optimization, we suspect that we will need fewer than half the original number of points and so do not expect a computational slow down. In the figures above, we observe that roughly 10 to

20 points out of  $m = 112$  or  $m = 500$  masses have weights that are visibly greater than 0. Furthermore, it is feasible that two points located close to each other might coalesce into a single point in such a way as to improve the objective if their locations are allowed to vary. This encourages us to proceed using roughly 10 to 20 probability masses with variable weights and locations for  $\hat{F}_X$ .

We start with Figure 7.4 in which we compare the result we obtain using the fixed but random location method of Delaigle and Hall [15], and the results we obtain when we allow the location of the probability masses in  $F_{\theta, \mathbf{p}}$  to vary. As well as plotting  $\hat{F}_X$  and  $\hat{f}_X$ , we also provide a table with the various objective values obtained in the final result, as well as the time taken to run the code on a i5-4670K CPU running at 4.3 GHz, running MATLAB R2018a. For comparison, we also give the various objective values obtained by using the empirical distribution of  $W$  as  $\hat{F}_X$ . The values  $T$ ,  $P_1$ ,  $P_2$  are as defined in Section 7.2.2, we use  $OBJ_1$  to denote the objective of our first minimization,  $T(F) + \lambda_1 P_1(F) + \lambda_2 P_2(F)$ , and  $\text{Var}$  to denote the variance of  $\hat{F}_X$  (our second objective).

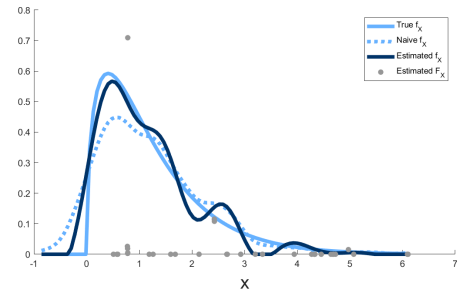
For this particular example, we note that we need only 10 masses (Figure 7.4d) to obtain smaller values for both of our objectives when compared to the original fixed masses, and that this results in a significant speed up, as expected. We get even further improvement going from 10 to 20 masses (Figure 7.4c). However, when we use 40 masses (Figure 7.4b), we note that  $OBJ_1$  is significantly larger than in any of the cases where we use fewer masses, and that  $\text{Var}\hat{F}_X$  is smaller than in any other case. One potential explanation here is that the parameter space becomes too complex for our optimization routine to find good solutions if we allow too many moving masses and so  $OBJ_1$  is much larger than the global minimum. This means that when we come to our second objective of minimizing  $\text{Var}\hat{F}_X$ , the constraints  $T(F) \leq T_{\min}$ ,  $P_1(F) \leq P_1^{\min}$ , and  $P_2(F) \leq P_2^{\min}$  are lax, and so we have more room to search for feasible distributions with small variance.

It also appears as if the 40 mass case is a closer fit for the true curve than any of the other estimates, despite achieving worse results in the first objective. Although this is purely conjecture, we suggest that this could be because the constraints  $T(F) \leq T_{\min}$ ,  $P_1(F) \leq P_1^{\min}$ , and  $P_2(F) \leq P_2^{\min}$  are often too strict to achieve the variance we desire in the second optimization. The first optimization found a solution which just happened to be far enough away from the global minimum to allow for enough freedom in minimizing the variance that we obtained a result that achieved closer to the true variance. One could try using as constraints,  $T(F) \leq (1 + \delta)T_{\min}$ ,  $P_1(F) \leq (1 + \delta)P_1^{\min}$ , and  $P_2(F) \leq (1 + \delta)P_2^{\min}$ , to allow for this behaviour when the first minimization attains a result closer to the global optimum, but we cannot see any obvious way to determine good values for  $\delta$ .



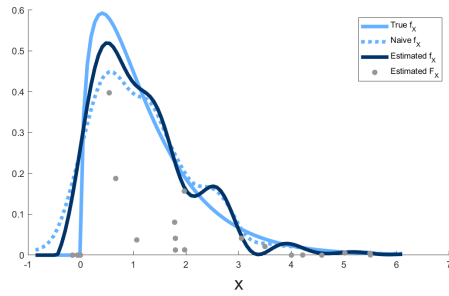
$OBJ_1$  0.2284  
 $\text{Var}\hat{F}_X$  0.8613  
 $T(\hat{F}_X)$  3.8697e-07  
 $P_1$  4.5679e-04  
 $P_2$  0  
 $t$  195s

(a) 112 fixed masses



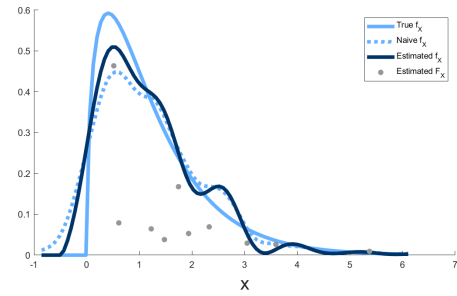
$OBJ_1$  54.3622  
 $\text{Var}\hat{F}_X$  0.6554  
 $T(\hat{F}_X)$  1.7882e-06  
 $P_1$  0.1087  
 $P_2$  0  
 $t$  76s

(b) 40 moving masses



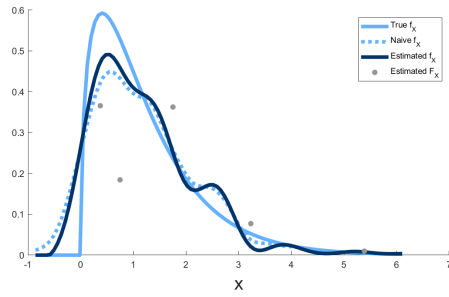
$OBJ_1$  0.0396  
 $\text{Var}\hat{F}_X$  0.8042  
 $T(\hat{F}_X)$  4.4981e-07  
 $P_1$  7.9209e-05  
 $P_2$  0  
 $t$  37s

(c) 20 moving masses



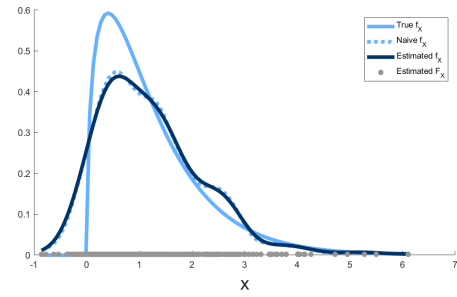
$OBJ_1$  0.1374  
 $\text{Var}\hat{F}_X$  0.8269  
 $T(\hat{F}_X)$  4.2464e-07  
 $P_1$  2.7478e-04  
 $P_2$  0  
 $t$  15s

(d) 10 moving masses



$OBJ_1$  0.3905  
 $\text{Var}\hat{F}_X$  0.8888  
 $T(\hat{F}_X)$  3.6213e-07  
 $P_1$  7.8093e-04  
 $P_2$  0  
 $t$  4s

(e) 5 moving masses



$OBJ_1$  2.7811e-07  
 $\text{Var}\hat{F}_X$  1.0350  
 $T(\hat{F}_X)$  2.7810e-07  
 $P_1$  1.0079e-14  
 $P_2$  1.7097e-14  
 $t$  NA

(f) The empirical distribution of  $W$ 

Figure 7.4 – Comparison of results between fixed and variable probability mass locations.

The results in Figure 7.4 are encouraging, and in our experience are consistent in a wide variety of scenarios. We present some more examples in Figure 7.5. In this figure we compare the fixed but random location method with the varying location method for three different scenarios. A discrete true distribution with normal errors and  $n = 5000$  observations (Figures 7.5a and 7.5b), a Gumbel true distribution with Laplace errors and  $n = 500$  observations (Figures 7.5c and 7.5d), and a Gamma with shape 5 and rate 2 true distribution with discrete errors and  $n = 100$  observations (Figures 7.5e and 7.5f). For the varying location method we use  $m = 20$  masses and for the fixed but random location method we use  $m = 5\sqrt{n}$  masses. In each scenario we observe that the varying location method is much faster, and in two of the three scenarios produces better objective values. In the scenario where the varying location method did not produce as good results (Figures 7.5c and 7.5d), the fixed location method only assigned approximately 12 or 13 points weights that were noticeably larger than zero and the varying location method made several point masses redundant. This suggests that the slightly worse result of the varying location method is not due to using too few points.

Of course, it is possible that there is a wide class of deconvolution problems in which a large number of point masses are required to achieve a good solution, and that we have just happened to avoid examples of these. However, we do not think that this is the case, and even if it is, we do not think that this is a large concern. One can simply repeat the deconvolution with an increasing number of point masses in  $\hat{F}_X$  until it does not result in an improvement in our objectives.

### 7.3.1 R Package

Given all the discussion above, we see no reason not to use masses with variable locations. We have used this new method in the R [62] Package ‘deconvolve’ [17]. This package is a collection of tools for performing non-parametric deconvolution on measurement error problems. It contains functions for finding bandwidths, deconvolved densities, and non-parametric regression estimates. The methods discussed in this chapter for when the error distribution is unknown form just one part of the package. We give a brief overview of the performance of our implementation of it in R.

In Figure 7.6, we show the output of our package when the contaminated data is identical to that used in producing Figure 7.2. As in Figure 7.4, we provide the values obtained of each of our objectives, as well as the time taken to run.

To perform the two non-linear optimizations we use the package Nlcoptim [11]. In the example in Figure 7.6, we used 20 moving masses in our estimate  $\hat{F}_X$ . This make it directly comparable to 7.4c, since we are using identical data and parameters. While

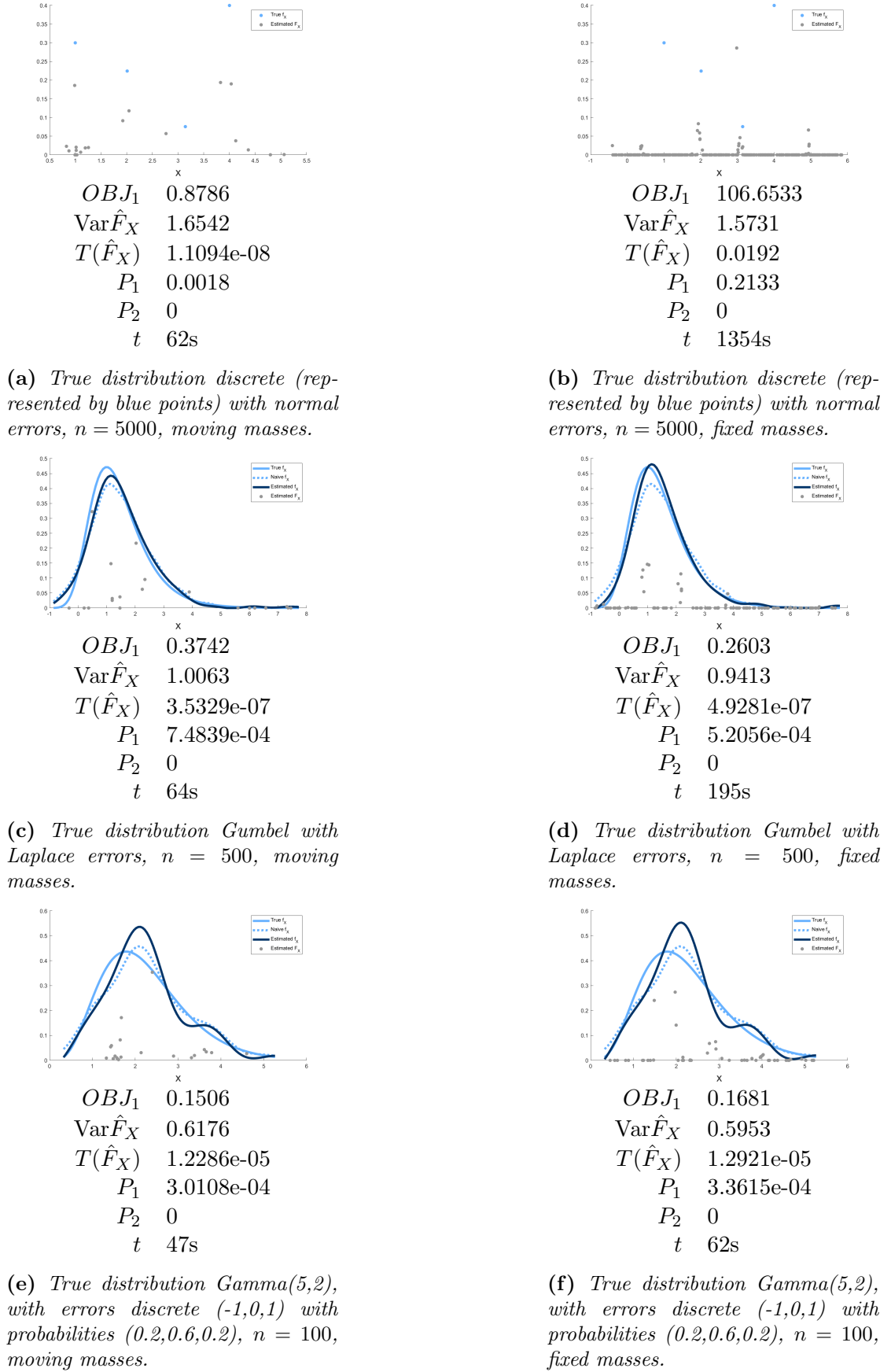
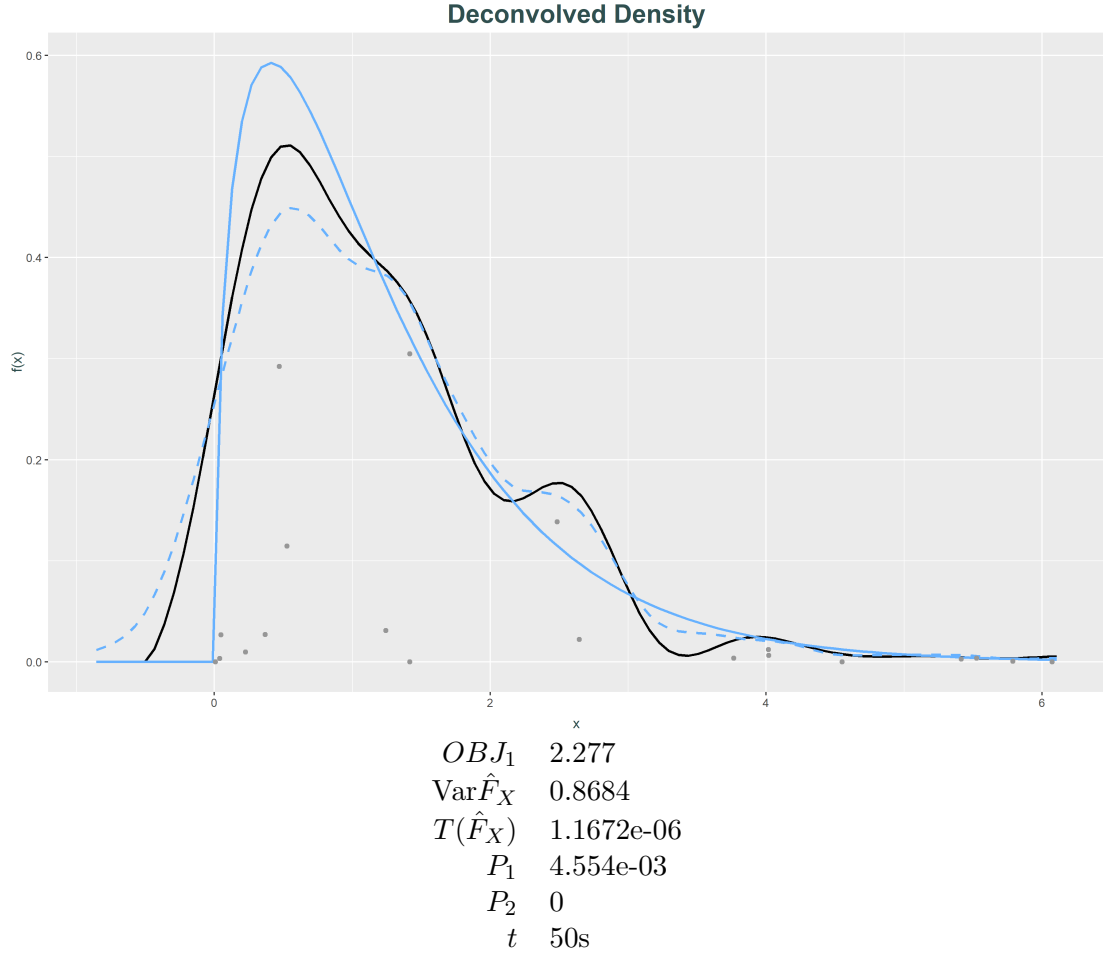


Figure 7.5 – Three more comparisons between moving masses and fixed masses.



**Figure 7.6** – The output of the ‘deconvolve’ package with data as in Figure 7.2 and using  $m = 20$  moving masses.

the objective values obtained are worse than those in the equivalent MATLAB implementation, the resulting density is still reasonable and we still benefit from a significant speed up over the original fixed mass implementation. In practice, we found this to be fairly typical of our implementation in ‘deconvolve’.

We are unsure as to why our implementation in R tends to produce worse objective values than our implementation in MATLAB. We suspect that the optimization routines used in MATLAB’s *fmincon* function are more powerful than those used in the *Nlcoptim* package for R, but we do not know exactly what is going on. However, we are not particularly concerned about it since despite the difference in objective values, the estimated densities we obtain using R appear to be just as good as those we get in MATLAB. This could also be related to the discussion earlier in this section about Figure 7.4b in which we pointed out that worse objective values in our first optimization can sometimes produce better looking densities.

## 7.4 General observations and results

We end this chapter by making some comparisons between our deconvolution problem, and the maximum likelihood location mixture problem of Chapter 6.

In Chapter 6, we defined a quantity  $K_{\mathbf{x}}$  (6.7) which counted the number of components in the maximum likelihood mixture. One might think to define an analogous quantity here,  $K_W$ , which counts the number of point masses required to find the global optimum to our optimization problem. However, we do not think that this would be a very useful construct. Consider the empirical distribution of  $W$ ,  $\hat{F}_W$ . We trivially have that  $P_1(\hat{F}_W) = P_2(\hat{F}_W) = 0$  and that  $T(\hat{F}_W)$  is very close to zero (it would be exactly zero if we replaced  $|\hat{\psi}_W|^{1/2}$  with  $|\hat{\phi}_W|$ ). We suspect that  $OBJ_1$  will typically be much smaller for  $\hat{F}_W$  than for distributions with fewer than  $n$  points of support (see for example Figure 7.4f, and compare with the other figures in Figure 7.4) and so we would have  $K_W \geq n$ . This is clearly much larger than the quantity we are interested in.

Another approach we used in Chapter 6 was to explicitly write out our optimization problem in terms of the  $\theta_j$ s and  $p_j$ s (see Section 6.2.5). However, in the deconvolution setting, this becomes more complex. Even if we ignore our two penalties (and these might even simply be implementation details that are obscuring the basic problem), the problem becomes that of finding the  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$  and  $\mathbf{p}$  that minimize

$$\text{Var}(F_{\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathbf{p}}) = \left( \sum_{j=1}^m p_j \theta_j^2 \right) - \left( \sum_{j=1}^m p_j \theta_j \right)^2 \quad (7.51)$$

subject to the constraints

$$\theta_j - \theta_{j+1} \leq 0, \quad j = 1, \dots, m-1 \quad (7.52)$$

$$-p_j \leq 0, \quad j = 1, \dots, m \quad (7.53)$$

$$\sum_{j=1}^m p_j = 1. \quad (7.54)$$

and

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left| \hat{\phi}_W(t) \left| \sum_{j=1}^m p_j \exp(it\theta_j) \right| - |\hat{\psi}_W(t)|^{1/2} \left( \sum_{j=1}^m p_j \exp(it\theta_j) \right) \right|^2 w_1(t) dt \leq T^{\min}. \quad (7.55)$$

It is this last constraint which makes a similar analysis difficult. However, it is still worth noting that constraints (7.52) to (7.54) are shared with the maximum likelihood



optimization problem (in both problems we are searching for a discrete probability distribution), and that perhaps these constraints contribute to the phenomenon of interest.

We now make a simple observation about our deconvolution problem. We do not claim that it is new, but we think that it is still worth stating because it establishes another connection between our deconvolution problem, and the mixture problem of Chapter 6.

**Theorem 7.1.** *Let  $F_1$  and  $F_2$  be two distributions with phase functions  $\rho_1$  and  $\rho_2$ , and let*

$$F_Z = (1 - \lambda)F_1 + \lambda F_2, \quad \lambda \in [0, 1] \quad (7.56)$$

*be a convex combination of these distributions. If  $\rho_1 = \rho_2$ , then*

$$\rho_Z = \rho_1 = \rho_2. \quad (7.57)$$

*Proof.* Write  $\phi_1$  and  $\phi_2$  for the characteristic functions of  $F_1$  and  $F_2$ . These are complex valued functions which we can write in the form

$$\phi_1(t) = r_1(t)e^{i\theta_1(t)}, \quad (7.58)$$

$$\phi_2(t) = r_2(t)e^{i\theta_2(t)}, \quad (7.59)$$

where  $r_1(t), r_2(t)$  take values on  $[0, 1]$  and where

$$\rho_1(t) = e^{i\theta_1(t)}, \quad (7.60)$$

$$\rho_2(t) = e^{i\theta_2(t)}. \quad (7.61)$$

The characteristic function of  $F_Z$  is

$$\phi_Z(t) = \int e^{itx} d[(1 - \lambda)F_1(x) + \lambda F_2(x)] \quad (7.62)$$

$$= (1 - \lambda)\phi_1 + \lambda\phi_2 \quad (7.63)$$

$$= (1 - \lambda)r_1(t)\rho_1(t) + \lambda r_2(t)\rho_2(t). \quad (7.64)$$

If  $\rho_1 = \rho_2$  then

$$\phi_Z(t) = ((1 - \lambda)r_1(t) + \lambda r_2(t)) \rho_1(t) \quad (7.65)$$

and so

$$\rho_Z = \rho_1 = \rho_2. \quad (7.66)$$

□

Recall that ideally, we would like to search the set of all distributions with phase function equal to that of  $W$  to find the distribution with smallest variance. Theorem 7.1 tells us that this set is convex. This is reminiscent of the maximum likelihood mixture problem of Chapter 6 in which we also optimize a function over a convex set (see in particular Section 6.2).

Furthermore, given any two distributions  $F_1$  and  $F_2$  with variances  $\sigma_1^2$  and  $\sigma_2^2$  respectively, a convex combination of them,  $F_Z = (1 - \lambda)F_1 + \lambda F_2$ , will have variance  $\sigma_Z^2 \geq (1 - \lambda)\sigma_1^2 + \lambda\sigma_2^2$ . Hence, the minimum variance distribution with phase function exactly equal to  $\rho_W$  must be on the boundary of this convex set, again reminiscent of the maximum likelihood mixture problem.

Of course, in reality we do not search over distributions with phase function exactly equal to  $W$ , but rather over distributions with phase function in some sense ‘close’ to an empirical estimate of the phase function of  $W$ . However the intuition gained above could potentially still be relevant. As mentioned above, it is possible that our implementation contains details that, while important for obtaining a good estimator, obscure the basic underlying problem which gives rise to the phenomenon of interest.

## 7.5 Conclusion

In this chapter we looked at the method for deconvolution when the error distribution is unknown that was proposed by Delaigle and Hall in [15]. As in Chapter 6, this involved searching for a discrete probability distribution as the solution to an optimization problem. We found that even though we allowed for many probability masses when finding this distribution, our optimization produced solutions in which most of these points had zero weight and so did not contribute to the distribution. Motivated by this, we suggested that instead of letting the point masses have fixed location and optimizing over their weights, we instead use a smaller number of points and let both their weights and locations be variable. The resulting optimization problem was significantly faster to run and, on the examples we tested, was capable of finding solutions that were comparable or better than those found using the previous method.

We used this new method in the R package ‘deconvolve’, which contains not only methods for deconvolution when the error distribution is unknown, but also a variety of other tools for performing non-parametric deconvolution, finding bandwidths, and non-parametric regression estimates. We commented that while our implementation in R benefited from the same speed up we observed in our MATLAB code, the objective values obtained were

typically not as good. While we did not know why this was happening, we were not too concerned about it as our R implementation still produced reasonable looking densities.

We ended the chapter with a brief discussion on the set of distributions with equal phase function and made a connection between the phenomenon of interest in this chapter, and the similar one in Chapter 6. However, we did not obtain any rigorous results which either bounded the number of point masses required or explained why only a few point masses contributed to the final result. It would be of interest to obtain results like these in the future, and in particular, to use these results to improve the efficiency of our methods.

## Chapter 8

# Conclusion to Part [II](#)

The second part of this thesis has focused on two optimization problems that arise in statistical inference. A property shared by these two problems is that in both of them we search for a discrete probability distribution and find that our solution contains surprisingly few points of support. While we were able to find and prove some new results concerning this phenomenon for maximum likelihood location mixtures, empirical results suggested that these could be either improved or generalised. Concerning our deconvolution problem, we were unable to prove any theoretical results, but again empirical exploration indicated that this phenomenon was typical and that there could be underlying reasons behind why it occurs. We therefore think that there is potential for future work to significantly add to the content of the second part of this thesis.

We would also like to note that these are not the only scenarios in which a phenomenon like this occurs. For a third example, we may consider extremal Markov moment problems (see [\[34\]](#) for more information) in which we find that the distribution which minimizes a certain objective, subject to certain constraints, has a known number of point masses which depends on the constraints. This is a well understood problem, and gives us hope that a deeper understanding of both our deconvolution problem, and the maximum likelihood mixture problem, may be achievable. In addition to this, the existence of this phenomenon in a variety of different settings hints at the possibility of a broad general theory connecting them.

Finally, there are also some other more specific areas in which future research would be of interest. Currently, characteristic functions and phase functions are poorly understood, particularly concerning their decomposability. We do not know when and if there is a unique indecomposable characteristic function with a given phase function. Answers to this question would help us understand better when our deconvolution method works best, and potentially provide insight into how we think about convolved distributions.

# Bibliography

- [1] H Akaike. A new look at the statistical model identification. *IEEE Trans. Automat. Contr.*, 19(6):716–723, December 1974.
- [2] David Aldous. Random walks on finite groups and rapidly mixing markov chains. In *Séminaire de Probabilités XVII 1981/82*, pages 243–297. Springer Berlin Heidelberg, 1983.
- [3] A D Barbour and O Chrysaphinou. Compound poisson approximation: a user’s guide. *Ann. Appl. Probab.*, 11(3):964–1002, August 2001.
- [4] A D Barbour, Louis H. Y. Chen, and Wei-Liem Loh. Compound poisson approximation for nonnegative random variables via stein’s method. *Ann. Probab.*, 20(4): 1843–1866, 1992.
- [5] Dimitri P Bertsekas. *Nonlinear Programming*. 1995.
- [6] Patrick Billingsley. *Probability and Measure*. Wiley Series in Probability and Mathematical Statistics. John Wiley & Sons, 1995.
- [7] Dankmar Böhning. A review of reliable maximum likelihood algorithms for semi-parametric mixture models. *J. Stat. Plan. Inference*, 47(1):5–28, October 1995.
- [8] Cristina Butucea and Catherine Matias. Minimax estimation of the noise level and of the deconvolution density in a semiparametric convolution model. *Bernoulli*, 11(2):309–340, April 2005.
- [9] Cristina Butucea, Catherine Matias, and Christophe Pouet. Adaptivity in convolution models with partially known noise distribution. *Electron. J. Stat.*, 2:897–915, 2008.
- [10] Raymond J Carroll and Peter Hall. Optimal rates of convergence for deconvolving a density. *J. Am. Stat. Assoc.*, 83(404):1184–1186, December 1988.
- [11] X Chen and X Yin. Nlcoptim: Solve nonlinear optimization with nonlinear constraints, 2017.

- [12] Andrea Collecchio, Eren Metin Elci, Timothy M Garoni, and Martin Weigel. On the coupling time of the Heat-Bath process for the Fortuin-Kasteleyn Random-Cluster model. *J. Stat. Phys.*, 170(1):22–61, January 2018.
- [13] A Delaigle and I Gijbels. Estimation of integrated squared density derivatives from a contaminated sample. *J. R. Stat. Soc. Series B Stat. Methodol.*, 64(4):869–886, October 2002.
- [14] A Delaigle and I Gijbels. Practical bandwidth selection in deconvolution kernel density estimation. *Comput. Stat. Data Anal.*, 45(2):249–267, March 2004.
- [15] Aurore Delaigle and Peter Hall. Methodology for non-parametric deconvolution when the error distribution is unknown. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society: Series B (Statistical Methodology)*, 78(1):231–252, January 2016.
- [16] Aurore Delaigle, Peter Hall, and Alexander Meister. On deconvolution with repeated measurements. *Ann. Stat.*, 36(2):665–685, April 2008.
- [17] Aurore Delaigle, Timothy Hyndman, and Tianying Wang. deconvolve: Deconvolution tools for measurement error problems, 2019.
- [18] P Diaconis. The cutoff phenomenon in finite markov chains. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U. S. A.*, 93(4):1659–1664, February 1996.
- [19] Peter J Diggle and Peter Hall. A fourier approach to nonparametric deconvolution of a density estimate. *J. R. Stat. Soc. Series B Stat. Methodol.*, 55(2):523–531, 1993.
- [20] Jian Ding, Eyal Lubetzky, and Yuval Peres. The mixing time evolution of glauher dynamics for the Mean-Field ising model. *Commun. Math. Phys.*, 289(2):725–764, July 2009.
- [21] C Domb and R B Potts. Order-disorder statistics IV. a two-dimensional model with first and second interactions. *Proc. R. Soc. Lond. A Math. Phys. Sci.*, 210(1100):125–141, 1951.
- [22] P Erdős and A Renyi. On a classical problem of probability theory. *Publ. Math. Inst. Hung. Acad. Sci., Ser. A* 6:215–219, 1961.
- [23] Sacha Friedli and Yvan Velenik. *Statistical Mechanics of Lattice Systems: A Concrete Mathematical Introduction*. Cambridge University Press, November 2017.
- [24] Shirshendu Ganguly and Insuk Seo. Information percolation and cutoff for the Random-Cluster model. December 2018.

- [25] Boris L Granovsky and Neal Madras. The noisy voter model. *Stochastic Process. Appl.*, 55(1):23–43, January 1995.
- [26] Ulf Grenander. *Abstract inference*. Wiley, New York, 1981.
- [27] Olle Häggström. *Finite Markov Chains and Algorithmic Applications*. Cambridge University Press, May 2002.
- [28] J A Hartigan. A failure of likelihood asymptotics for normal mixtures. In *Proceedings of the Berkeley conference in honor of Jerzy Neyman and Jack Kiefer*, volume 2, pages 807–810, 1985.
- [29] Ernst Ising. Beitrag zur theorie des ferromagnetismus. *Zeitschrift für Physik*, 31(1):253–258, February 1925.
- [30] Mark Jerrum. Mathematical foundations of the markov chain monte carlo method. In Michel Habib, Colin McDiarmid, Jorge Ramirez-Alfonsin, and Bruce Reed, editors, *Probabilistic Methods for Algorithmic Discrete Mathematics*, pages 116–165. Springer Berlin Heidelberg, Berlin, Heidelberg, 1998.
- [31] Mark Jerrum and Alistair Sinclair. Polynomial-time approximation algorithms for the ising model. *SIAM J. Comput.*, 22(5):1087–1116, 1993.
- [32] William Karush. Minima of functions of several variables with inequalities as side conditions. In Giorgio Giorgi and Tinne Hoff Kjeldsen, editors, *Traces and Emergence of Nonlinear Programming*, pages 217–245. Springer Basel, Basel, 2014.
- [33] Alois Kneip, Léopold Simar, Ingrid Van Keilegom, and Others. Boundary estimation in the presence of measurement error with unknown variance. *J. Econom.*, 2012.
- [34] Mark Grigor’evich Kreĭn and Adol’f Abramovich Nudel’man. *The Markov Moment Problem and Extremal Problems*. American Mathematical Society, Providence, Rhode Island, 1977.
- [35] H W Kuhn and A W Tucker. Nonlinear programming. In *Proceedings of the Second Berkeley Symposium on Mathematical Statistics and Probability*. The Regents of the University of California, 1951.
- [36] Wilhelm Lenz. Beiträge zum verständnis der magnetischen eigenschaften in festen körpern. *Phys. Z.*, 21:613–615, 1920.
- [37] Brian G Leroux. Consistent estimation of a mixing distribution. *Ann. Stat.*, 20(3):1350–1360, September 1992.

- [38] David A Levin, Yuval Peres, and Elizabeth L Wilmer. *Markov chains and mixing times*. American Mathematical Society, 2009.
- [39] Tong Li and Quang Vuong. Nonparametric estimation of the measurement error model using multiple indicators. *J. Multivar. Anal.*, 65(2):139–165, 1998.
- [40] Thomas M Liggett. *Interacting Particle Systems*. Grundlehren der mathematischen Wissenschaften. Springer New York, 1985.
- [41] Xihong Lin and Raymond J Carroll. Semiparametric estimation in general repeated measures problems. *J. R. Stat. Soc. Series B Stat. Methodol.*, 68(1):69–88, 2006.
- [42] Bruce G Lindsay. The geometry of mixture likelihoods: A general theory. *Ann. Stat.*, 11(1):86–94, March 1983.
- [43] Bruce G Lindsay. The geometry of mixture likelihoods, part II: The exponential family. *Ann Stat*, 11(3):783–792, September 1983.
- [44] Bruce G Lindsay. *Mixture Models: Theory, Geometry, and Applications*. IMS, 1995.
- [45] Bruce G Lindsay and Kathryn Roeder. Uniqueness of estimation and identifiability in mixture models. *Can. J. Stat.*, 21(2):139–147, June 1993.
- [46] Eyal Lubetzky and Allan Sly. Cutoff for the ising model on the lattice. *Invent. Math.*, 191(3):719–755, March 2013.
- [47] Eyal Lubetzky and Allan Sly. An exposition to information percolation for the ising model. *Ann. Fac. Sci. Toulouse Math.*, 24(4):745–761, 2015.
- [48] Eyal Lubetzky and Allan Sly. Information percolation and cutoff for the stochastic ising model. *J. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 29(3):729–774, 2016.
- [49] Eyal Lubetzky and Allan Sly. Universality of cutoff for the ising model. *Ann. Probab.*, 45(6A):3664–3696, November 2017.
- [50] F Martinelli and E Olivieri. Approach to equilibrium of glauher dynamics in the one phase region. *Commun.Math. Phys.*, 161(3):447–486, April 1994.
- [51] Julie McIntyre and Leonard A Stefanski. Density estimation with replicate heteroscedastic measurements. *Ann. Inst. Stat. Math.*, 63(1):81–99, February 2011.
- [52] Geoffrey McLachlan and David Peel. *Finite Mixture Models*, volume 44. John Wiley & Sons, April 2004.
- [53] Alexander Meister. Density estimation with normal measurement error with unknown variance. *Stat. Sin.*, 16(1):195–211, 2006.



- [54] Danny Nam and Allan Sly. Cutoff for the Swendsen-Wang dynamics on the lattice. May 2018.
- [55] Michael H Neumann and O Hössjer. On the effect of estimating the error density in nonparametric deconvolution. *J. Nonparametr. Stat.*, 7(4):307–330, January 1997.
- [56] Hien D Nguyen and Geoffrey J McLachlan. On approximations via convolution-defined mixture models. *Communications in Statistics-Theory and Methods*, pages 1–14, 2018.
- [57] Lars Onsager. Crystal statistics. i. a Two-Dimensional model with an Order-Disorder transition. *Phys. Rev.*, 65(3-4):117–149, February 1944.
- [58] Karl Pearson. Contributions to the mathematical theory of evolution. *Philos. Trans. R. Soc. Lond. A*, 185:71–110, 1894.
- [59] R Peierls. On ising’s model of ferromagnetism. *Math. Proc. Cambridge Philos. Soc.*, 32(3):477–481, October 1936.
- [60] Carey E Priebe. Adaptive mixtures. *J. Am. Stat. Assoc.*, 89(427):796–806, September 1994.
- [61] James Gary Propp and David Bruce Wilson. Exact sampling with coupled markov chains and applications to statistical mechanics. *Random Structures & Algorithms*, 9(1-2):223–252, 1996.
- [62] R Core Team. R: A language and environment for statistical computing, 2018.
- [63] S M Schennach and Yingyao Hu. Nonparametric identification and semiparametric estimation of classical measurement error models without side information. *J. Am. Stat. Assoc.*, 108(501):177–186, March 2013.
- [64] Gideon Schwarz. Estimating the dimension of a model. *Ann. Stat.*, 6(2):461–464, March 1978.
- [65] Leonard A Stefanski and Raymond J Carroll. Deconvoluting kernel density estimators. *Statistics*, 21(2):169–184, January 1990.
- [66] Larry Alan Wasserman. *All of Statistics: A Concise Course in Statistical Inference*. Springer, New York, NY, 2003.